

Online tananyag

Interdiszciplináris tudományok

Sorozatszerkesztő: Dr. Balázs László

24. *Angol-haladó egyesítve = B2*



DUNAÚJVÁROSI EGYETEM
UNIVERSITY OF DUNAÚJVÁROS

Table of Content

UNIT 1.

Simple Present	7
Present Simple – Egyszerű jelen idő	13
Present Continuous – Folyamatos jelen idő	24
Present Continuous	27
Present Continuous – Folyamatos jelen idő	29
Present Continuous	33
Past Continuous – Folyamatos múlt idő	40
John Buchan Thirty – Nine Steps	45
Writing – Family	47
Speaking – Family	48
Vocabulary: Family	49
Teens: Alcohol And Other Drugs	51
English – a world language	53
Reading comprehension – Social networking sites	54
Slang	57
Crime	58
Festivals	60
Climate Change: Basic Information	62
Climate change affects everyone	64
Environment	66
Medical English vocabulary	68

UNIT 2.

ppt bemutatóanyag – Past Simple vs. Past Continuous	72
Simple Past	79
Simple Past– Egyszerű Múlt Idő	86
British Universities	92
Writing Education	96
Speaking – Education	97
Education Words	99
How to talk about illness	101
Reported Speech in English	104
Read vocabulary	107
Past Continuous – Folyamatos múlt idő	110
Past Continuous	114
Irregular verbs	121

UNIT 3.

Unit 3. Speaking: Employment	134
Conditionals hungarian explanation TEXT	136
Layout of a Formal Letter	139
Present Perfect Continuous	144
Writing Employment	148
Weather words	149
Negotiations: tricky conversations	151
Employment Words	153
Tricky conversations	157
Present Perfect	159

UNIT 4.

Speaking: Shopping	169
Writing: Shopping	171
English shopping	172
Shopping online	179
Shopping and services	181
Shopping WORD LIST	183
Commercial English – Information	186
Weather Vocabulary	187
Internet Shopping	198
A story about a manager	201
Negotiations: difficult clients	202
Questions to the topic	205
Shopping Weekender	206
Weekender Teleshopping	208
Future Continuous	201
Future Perfect	219
Simple Future	224

UNIT 5.

Past Perfect	232
Past Perfect Continuous	237
Past Continuous vs. Past Perfect Continuous	239
Unit 5. Listening: A poem for you	242
Unit 5. Listening: Ethical travel	243
Listening: Family and Society	246

Unit 5. Reading: Travelling	248
Speaking: Travelling	252

UNIT 6.

Grammar: Browsing the net	255
Grammar: Newspaper	260
Conditionals	261
The First Conditional	264
The Second Conditional	266
The Third Conditional	268
Reading: Words – Entertainment	269
Vocabulary – JOURNALISM	273
Speaking: Entertainment	276

UNIT 7.

Reported Speech in English	279
English Modal Verbs	282
Listening Health	284
Listening: Health and illnesses I.	286
Listening: Health and illness II.	291
Medical English vocabulary	294
Vocabulary	297
Speaking	298
Speaking: Sports vocabulary	301

UNIT 8.

BBC Learning English Weekender Polar Explorer	312
Talking about the weather in English	318
Weather words	321
Dressing for the Occasion	323
Grammar: Environment and weather	330
Climate Change: Basic Information	333
Climate change affects everyone	335
Reading: Vocabulary Weather I.	337
Reading: Vocabulary Weather II.	339

UNIT 9.

Reading: Buying a house	350
Reading: English bedroom	351
Reading: Kitchen	352
Speaking: Meals and services	353
Take-away food	354
Reading Services	355
Property & Real-Estate	356
Housing Words	357
Reading Comprehension Task: Housing	359
Speaking: Housing I.	361
Speaking: Housing II.	366

UNIT 10.

Speaking: Crime and Punishment	369
Grammar: Crime and punishment	371
Reading: Crime and punishment	374
Words	376

UNIT 11.

Festivals and Celebrations	379
Speaking: Festivals and Celebrations	381
Reading: Festivals and celebrations I.	384
Reading: Festivals and celebrations II.	398
Listening: Services	400

UNIT 12.

Reading Unit 12 – Politics	404
The Roma Minority in Hungary	406
WORDS – ROMA MINORITY	408
Speaking: Expression for the oral exam	409
Speaking: Politics	410
Presidential Elections	412
Gerunds and Infinitives	415
A Gerund és az Infinitive tanulásakor	426
Infinitive	428
Verbs Followed by Gerunds	433

Verbs Followed by Infinitives	439
Politics Words	444

UNIT 13.

Informalenglish	448
Listening: Communication	454
Speaking: Communication	456
Commercial English – Information	458
Layout of a Formal Letter	459
Writing: Writing dates	465
Slang	466
Australian English – British English	467
British – American English – Spelling Rules	472
British (not only British) newspapers	473
English – a world language	474
Commercial English – Letters	475
An Example for the Informal letter and Some Useful Information about it	478
Letter	481
I expect to pass through this world but once	482

UNIT 1.

Simple Present

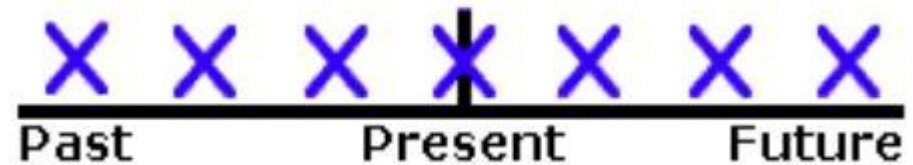
FORM

[VERB] + s/es in third person

Examples:

- You **speak** English.
- D- you **speak** English?
- You d- **not speak** English.

USE 1 REPEATED ACTIONS



Use the Simple Present to express the idea that an action is repeated or usual. The action can be a habit, a hobby, a daily event, a scheduled event or something that often happens. It can also be something a person often forgets or usually does not do.

Examples:

I **play** tennis.

She does not play **tennis**.

Does he **play** tennis?

The train **leaves** every morning at 8 AM.

The train **does not leave** at 9 AM.

When **does** the train usually **leave**?

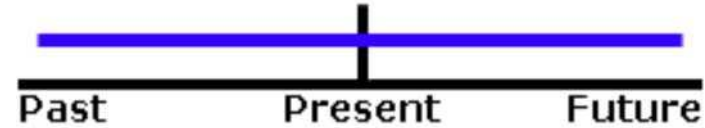
She always **forgets** her purse.

He never **forgets** his wallet.

Every twelve months, the Earth **circles** the Sun.

Does the Sun **circle** the Earth?

USE 2 FACTS OR GENERALIZATIONS



The Simple Present can also indicate the speaker believes that a fact was true before, is true now, and will be true in the future. It is not important if the *speaker is correct about the fact*. It is also used to make generalizations about people or things.

Examples:

Cats **like** milk.

Birds **do not like** milk.

Do pigs **like** milk?

California **is** in America.

California **is not** in the United Kingdom.

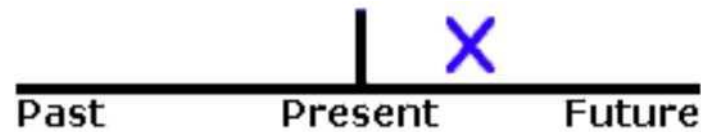
Windows **are** made of glass.

Windows **are not** made of wood.

New York is a small city.

It is not important that this fact is untrue.

USE 3 SCHEDULED EVENTS IN THE NEAR FUTURE



Speakers occasionally use Simple Present to talk about scheduled events in the near future. This is most commonly done when talking about public transportation, but it can be used with other scheduled events as well.

Examples:

The train **leaves** tonight at 6 PM.

The bus does not arrive at 11 AM, it **arrives** at 11 PM. it arrives at 11 PM. When **d-** we **board** the plane?

The party **starts** at 8 o'clock.

When **does** class begin tomorrow?

USE 4 NOW (NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS)



Speakers sometimes use the Simple Present to express the idea that an action is happening or is not happening now. This can only be done with Non- Continuous Verbs and certain Mixed Verbs.

Examples:

- I **am** here now.
- She **is not** here now.
- He **needs** help right now.
- He **does not need** help now.
- He **has** his passport in his hand.
- D- you **have** your passport with you?

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You **only** speak English.
- D- you **only** speak English?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- Once a week, Tom **cleans** the car. ACTIVE
- Once a week, the car **is cleaned** by Tom. PASSIVE

Present Simple – Egyszerű jelen idő

AZ EGYSZERŰ JELEN IDŐ ALAKJA:

Az állító mondat:

Első helyen az alany áll, vagyis aki végzi a cselekményt, vagy amivel történik egy dolog.

I like tennis. (Szeretek teniszezni.)

Ha az alany egyes szám harmadik személyű pl. (she, your mother, the dog stb.) akkor az igeiken ezt jeleznünk kell. Hogyan? Úgy, hogy az igehez egy „s” –t biggyesztünk. Ez a gyakorlatban így néz ki:

She likes tennis.

Your mother likes cooking. (Anyád szeret főzni.)

A tagadás:

Ha nem egyes szám harmadik személyű a mondatunk, akkor viszonylag egyszerű dolgunk van. A „DO” segédigével tagadunk. Persze úgy, hogy a „not” szócskát is beszúrjuk.

I do not like tennis.

Ennek gyakorlatiasabb, a hétköznapi életben használt formája a „don't” összevonás.

I don't like tennis.

Igen ám, de mi történik az E.sz.3.sz-ű mondatokkal? Ezek a tagadásban is másképp viselkednek. Nem a „do” hanem a „does” lesz a tagadáshoz használt segédige. Ha ez mind nem elég, meg kell azt is jegyezni, hogy az ige viszont még egyszer már nem kapja meg a „s” jelzést. Itt is létezik összevont alak, ez a „DOESN’T”.

She does not like tennis.

She doesn't like tennis.

Your mother doesn't like cooking.

A kérdés:

A kérdés kétféle lehet: eldöntendő (igen vagy nem rá a válasz) és kiegészítendő (kérdőszavas kérdésekre, több szóban válaszolunk) Ismét, ha nem E.sz.3. személyben van a mondatunk, a „DO” varázsszóval kérdezzük. Úgy, hogy ha eldöntendő a kérdés, akkor először jön a „do” utána a személy, őt követi az ige. Pl.

Do you like tennis?

Do you speak English? (a sokszor hallott kérdés)

Ha a kérdés kiegészítendő, akkor első helyen a kérdőszó áll, azt követi a „DO” majd a személy és az ige.

Where do you play tennis?

Why do you play tennis? (Miért?)

What do they play?

Jöjjön a mumus! A logika ugyanaz, csak a „DOES”-t használjuk, a „DO” helyett, és ne feledjük, az igehez már nem kapcsolunk „s”-t.

Eldöntendő kérdés:

Does she read a lot? (Sokat olvas?)

Does your brother study well? (A tesód jól tanul?)

Does Mary love John? (Mary szereti Johnt?)

Kiegészítendő kérdés:

How does your brother go to work? (Hogyan jár a testvéred munkába?)

Why does she hate me so much? (Miért utál ennyire?)

How does Mary want to do it? (Hogyan akarja ezt Mary megcsinálni?)

A kérdésekkel kapcsolatban még egy megjegyzés:

Ha az alanyra kérdezzük rá, pl. Ki ír minden nap levelet neked? Akkor a „do” és does” segédigéket nem használjuk. Helyette „magyarosan” gondolkodunk.

Who live on the third floor? Kik laknak a harmadikon?

Who helps you with your work? Ki segít a munkádban?

AZ EGYSZERŰ JELEN IDŐT AKKOR HASZNÁLJUK, HA:

– rutinszerű, szokásos, ismétlődő cselekvésekről beszélünk. Maga a cselekvés lehet hobbi, szokás (pl. Minden reggel kávézom.), napirend, egy időhöz rögzített esemény (pl. menetrend), ami gyakran megtörténik.

Jellemző határozói: always (mindig), usually (rendszerint), often (gyakran), normally, regularly (rendszeresen), sometimes (néha), every day, never, generally (általában).

Például:

I normally wear jeans. (Általában farmert hordok.)

– tényekről és állapotokról beszélünk.

I go to school. (Iskolába járok.)

California is in America.

The train leaves every morning at 6 AM. (A vonat minden nap reggel 6-kor indul.)

A Present Simple-t használjuk még akkor, amikor arról beszélünk mi történik, vagy mi nem történik most. De! Ezt csak azoknál az igéknél alkalmazzuk, amiket nem lehet folyamatos jelen időbe (Present Continuous) tenni.

*I **am** here now.*

*She **is not** here now.*

*He **needs** help right now.*

*He **does not need** help now.*

He **has** his passport in his hand.

Do you **have** your passport with you?

Viccesen ezeket az igéket „feketelistás” igéknek nevezték el (Király 1998). Azért vannak feketelistán, mert a cselekvés, amit a személy éppen végez, az nem látható.

ÍLYENEK AZ ABSZTRAKT IGÉK:

to be (lenni), to want, to cost (kerül vm-be), to seem (tűnik), to need (kell, szüksége van), to care (gondoskodik, törődik), to contain (tartalmaz), to owe (tartozik vk-nek vm-nek), to exist (létezik)...

BIRTOKLÁST KIFEJEZŐ IGÉK: POSSESSION VERBS

to possess (birtokol), to own (birtokol), to belong (tartozik vk-hez vm-hez)...

ÉRZELMEKET KIFEJEZŐ IGÉK – EMOTION VERBS

to like, to love, to hate, to dislike, to fear (fél), to envy (irigyel), to mind (bán vm-t, törődik vm-vel)...

– He **is needing** help now. *Not Correct!!!*

– He **needs** help now. *Correct*

– He **is wanting** a drink now. *ot Correct!!!*

– He **wants** a drink now. *Correct*

VEGYES IGÉK – MIXED VERBS

Ezeknek az igéknek több jelentésük is van. Valójában minden jelentés egy önálló igét jelent. Néhány jelentés úgy használható, mint egy normális ige (vagyis van folyamatos és egyszerű alakja is) néhány esetben pedig csak az egyszerű jelen idejű alak alkalmazható.

Vegyes igék -Mixed Verbs

to appear (tűnik), to feel (érez), to have, to hear, to look, to see, to weigh (nyom súlyt)...

to appear:

– *Donna **appears** confused.* Non-Continuous Verb (zavartnak tűnik –itt nem alkalmazható a folyamatos jelen idő)

DONNA SEEMS CONFUSED.

– *My favorite singer **is appearing** at the jazz club tonight.* Normal Verb (az énekes fellép– itt alkalmazható)

MY FAVORITE SINGER IS GIVING A PERFORMANCE AT THE JAZZ CLUB TONIGHT.

to have:

– *I **have** a dollar now.* Non-Continuous Verb (birtokol, van neki egy dollárja– itt nem alkalmazható)

I POSSESS A DOLLAR.

– *I **am having** fun now.* Normal Verb (a have fun egy “normális ige, nincs köze a birtokláshoz–itt ezért alkalmazható a folyamatos jelen idő)

I AM EXPERIENCING FUN NOW.

to hear:

– *She **hears** the music.* Non-Continuous Verb (hallja a zenét a fülével, mert nem süket)

SHE HEARS THE MUSIC WITH HER EARS.

– *She **is hearing** voices.* Normal Verb (hangokat hall, amit mások nem)

SHE HEARS SOMETHING OTHERS CANNOT HEAR. SHE IS HEARING VOICES IN HER MIND.

to look:

– *Nancy **looks** tired.* Non-Continuous Verb (Nancy fáradtnak néz ki/tűnik)

SHE SEEMS TIRED.

– *Farah **is looking** at the pictures.* Normal Verb (Farah **nézi** a képet)

SHE IS LOOKING WITH HER EYES.

to miss:

– *John **misses** Sally.* Non-Continuous Verb (Johnnak hiányzik Sally)

HE IS SAD BECAUSE SHE IS NOT THERE.

– *Debbie **is missing** her favorite TV program.* Normal Verb (Debbie kihagyja, elmulasztja a kedvenc műsorát, mert pl. nincs otthon)

SHE IS NOT THERE TO SEE HER FAVORITE PROGRAM.

to see:

– **I see her.** Non-Continuous Verb (Látom őt, mert van szemem)

I SEE HER WITH MY EYES.

– **I am seeing the doctor.** Normal Verb (Meglátogatom az orvosomat, elmegyek hozzá)

I AM VISITING OR CONSULTING WITH A DOCTOR. (ALSO USED WITH DENTIST AND LAWYER.)

– **I am seeing her.** Normal Verb (Látogatom őt, mert kapcsolatban vagyunk)

I AM HAVING A RELATIONSHIP WITH HER.

– **He is seeing ghosts at night.** Normal Verb (Olyan eset, mint a hallásnál: szellemeket lát, amit mások nem.)

HE SEES SOMETHING OTHERS CANNOT SEE. FOR EXAMPLE GHOSTS, AURA, A VISION OF THE FUTURE, ETC.

to smell:

– **The coffee smells good.** Non-Continuous Verb (A kávénak jó illata van)

THE COFFEE HAS A GOOD SMELL.

– **I am smelling the flowers.** Normal Verb (Szagolom/beszippantom a virágok illatát.)

I AM SNIFFING THE FLOWERS TO SEE WHAT THEIR SMELL IS LIKE.

to taste:

– *The coffee tastes good.* Non-Continuous Verb (A kávénak jó íze van.)

THE COFFEE HAS A GOOD TASTE.

– **I am tasting the cake.** Normal Verb (Mégkóstolom, kóstolgom a tortát)

I AM TRYING THE CAKE TO SEE WHAT IT TASTES LIKE.

to think:

– *He **thinks** the test is easy.* Non-Continuous Verb (A tesztet könnyűnek találja)

HE CONSIDERS THE TEST TO BE EASY.

– *She **is thinking** about the question.* Normal Verb (Gondolkodik a kérdésen)

SHE IS PONDERING THE QUESTION, GOING OVER IT IN HER MIND.

to weigh:

– *The table **weighs** a lot.* Non-Continuous Verb (Az asztal nehéz.)

THE TABLE IS HEAVY.

– *She **is weighing** herself.* Normal Verb (Leméri magát.)

SHE IS DETERMINING HER WEIGHT.

Néhány ige végképp összezavarhat:

to be:

– *Joe is American.* Non-Continuous Verb (Joe amerikai.)

JOE IS AN AMERICAN CITIZEN.

– *Joe is being very American.* Normal Verb (Joe nagyon úgy viselkedik, mint egy amerikai)

JOE IS BEHAVING LIKE A STEREOTYPICAL AMERICAN.

– *Joe is being very rude.* Normal Verb (Joe ma valahogy nagyon durva, közönséges. Általában nem ilyen)

JOE IS BEHAVING VERY RUDELY. USUALLY HE IS NOT RUDE.

– *Joe is being very formal.* Normal Verb (Joe nagyon hivatalos. Általában nem ilyen)

JOE IS BEHAVING VERY FORMALLY. USUALLY HE IS NOT FORMAL.

Figyelem! A „to be” folyamatos alakja ebben a formában nem gyakori. Általában akkor használjuk, ha a személy átmenetileg furcsán viselkedik.

to feel:

– *The massage feels great.* Non-Continuous Verb (A masszázs jól esik.)

THE MASSAGE HAS A PLEASING FEELING.

– **I don't feel well today.** Sometimes used as Non-Continuous Verb (Nem érzem jól magam,kicsit rosszul vagyok.)

I AM A LITTLE SICK.

I am not feeling well today. Sometimes used as Normal Verb (Na, itt van az az eset, amikor látszólag nem érthető a különbség. Maradjunk annyiban, hogy nincs különösebb eltérés a két használat között.)

I AM A LITTLE SICK.

Present Continuous – Folyamatos jelen idő

Formája: [am/is/are + ING]

You are watching TV.

Are you watching TV?

You are not watching TV.

A FOLYAMATOS JELEN IDŐT AKKOR HASZNÁLJUK HA:

– A cselekvés éppen most történik. (now, at this moment, at the moment) You are learning English now.

You are not swimming now.

Are you sleeping?

Why aren't you doing your homework?

– Ha a cselekvés mostanában zajlik. Lehet, hogy épp ebben a pillanatban nem. Ilyen az, ha házat építünk vagy tanulunk autót vezetni.

I'm reading the book Tom Sawyer.

I am not reading any books right now.

Are you working on any special projects at work?

Aren't you teaching at the university now?

– Közeljövőben megtörténő vagy meg nem történő cselekvésről beszélünk.

I am meeting some friends after work.

I am not going to the party tonight.

Is he visiting his parents next weekend?

Isn't he coming with us tonight?

– Valami idegesítő dologra utalunk, ami állandóan és folytonosan megtörténik. Ilyenkor azért az „always” vagy a „constantly” szavakat beszúrjuk, hogy a hallgató „vegye a lapot”.

She is always coming to class late.

He is constantly talking. I wish he would shut up.

I don't like them because they are always complaining.

Ne felejtjük el a folyamatos jelen időbe nem tehető igéket!

Ezekről a fentiekben már volt szó.

She is loving this chocolate ice cream. Not Correct

She loves this chocolate ice cream. Correct

A HATÁROZÓK ELHELYEZÉSE:

Figyeljük meg az always, only, never, ever, still, just helyét a mondatokban.

You are still watching TV.

Are you still watching TV?

Present Continuous

FORM

[am/is/are + present participle] Examples:

- You are watching TV
- Are **you** watching **TV**?
- **You** are not watching TV

USE 1 Now

Use the Present Continuous with **Normál Verbs** to express the idea that something is happening now, at this very moment. It can also be used to show that something is not happening now.

Examples:

You are learning English now.

You are not swimming now.

Are **you** sleeping?

I am sitting.

I am not standing.

Is he sitting or standing?

They are reading their books.

They are not watching television.

What are you doing?

Why aren't you doing your homework?

You are watching TV

– Are you watching TV?

– You are not watching TV

Present Continuous – Folyamatos jelen idő

Formája: [a m/is/a re + ING]

Állító mondat: A „to be” létige ragozott formája (I’m, you’re, he’s, we’re, they’re stb.) ezután jön az ige, amelyhez egy „ING” ragot teszünk.

You are watching TV. (You’re watching...)

He is playing the guitar. (He’s playing ...)

We are watching TV. (We’re watching...)

Tagadó mondat: A „not” szócskával tagadunk, melyet leginkább összevont alakjában használunk (I’m not, you aren’t, he isn’t, she isn’t, we aren’t, they aren’t stb.)
Az ige még mindig „ING”-es.

We aren’t watching TV. (We are not watching ...) They aren’t working now. I’m not talking to you.

Kérdés: A fordított szórend elve működik, felcseréljük az alanyt, az „am, is, are” alakokkal.

Are you watching TV?

Is Emma sleeping?

Are they listening to you?

Ha kiegészítendő, vagyis kérdőszavas a kérdésünk, akkor is él ez a szabály, csak a szórend: Kérdőszó, „am, is, are” alany.

Why is she running so fast?

What is she doing there?

Where is your dad going?

A folyamatos jelen időt akkor használjuk ha: A cselekvés éppen most történik, (now, at this moment, at the moment)

You are learning English now.

You are not swimming now.

Are you sleeping?

I am sitting.

I am not standing.

Is he sitting or standing?

They are reading their books.

They are not watching television.

What are you doing?

Why aren't you doing your homework?

– Ha a cselekvés mostanában zajlik, de lehet, hogy épp ebben a pillanatban nem. Ilyen az, ha házat építünk, vagy tanulunk autót vezetni.

I'm learning English.

I am reading the book I am Sawyer.

I am not reading any books right now.

Are you working on any special projects at work?

Aren't you teaching at the university now?

– Közeljövőben megtörténő vagy meg nem történő cselekvésről beszélünk.

I am meeting some friends after work.

I am not going to the party tonight.

Is he visiting his parents next weekend?

Isn't he coming with us tonight?

– Valami idegesítő dologra utalunk, ami állandóan és folytonosan megtörténik. Ilyenkor azért az „always” vagy a „constantly” szavakat beszúrjuk, hogy a hallgató „vegye a lapot”.

She is always coming to class late.

He is constantly talking. I wish he would shut up.

I don't like them because they are always complaining.

Ne felejtjük el a folyamatos jelen időbe nem tehető igéket! Ezekről az előző leckében már volt szó.

She is loving this chocolate ice cream. **Not Correct**

She loves this chocolate ice cream. **Correct**

A határozók elhelyezése:

Figyeljük meg az *always, only, never, ever, still, just* helyét a mondatokban.

You are *si/7/* watching TV.

Are you *si/7/* watching TV?

Present Continuous

FORM

[am/is/are + present participle]

Examples:

- You **are watching** TV.
- **Are you watching** TV?
- You **are not watching** TV.

Complete List of Present Continuous Forms

USE 1 Now



Use the Present Continuous with Normál Verbs to express the idea that something is happening now, at this very moment. It can also be used to show that something is not happening now.

Examples:

You **are learning** English now.

You **are not swimming** now.

Are you sleeping?

I am sitting.

I am not standing.

Is he **sitting** or **standing**?

They **are reading** their books.

They **are not watching** television.

What **are you doing**?

Why **aren't you doing** your homework?

– He is wanting a drink now. **Nem helyes!!! Not Correct!!!**

– He wants a drink now. **Helyes -Correct Vegyes igék – Mixed verbs**

Ezeknek az igéknek több jelentésük is van. Valójában minden jelentés egy önálló igét jelent. Néhány jelentés úgy használható, mint egy normális ige (vagyis van folyamatos és egyszerű alakja is) néhány esetben pedig csak az egyszerű jelen idejű alak alkalmazható.

VEGYES IGÉK -MIXED VERBS

to appear (tűnik), to feel (érez), to have, to hear, to look, to see, to weigh (nyom súlyt)...

to appear:

– Donna **appears** confused. Non-Continuous Verb (zavartnak tűnik – itt nem alkalmazható a folyamatos jelen idő)

DONNA SEEMS CONFUSED.

– My favorite singer **is appearing** at the jazz club tonight. Normal Verb (az énekes fellép– itt alkalmazható)

MY FAVORITE SINGER IS GIVING A PERFORMANCE AT THE JAZZ CLUB TONIGHT.

to have:

– I **have** a dollar now. Non-Continuous Verb (birtokol, van neki egy dollárja– itt nem alkalmazható)

I POSSESS A DOLLAR.

– I **am having** fun now. Normal Verb (a have fun egy “normális ige, nincs köze a birtokláshoz– itt ezért alkalmazható a folyamatos jelen idő)

I AM EXPERIENCING FUN NOW.

to hear:

– *She **hears** the music.* Non-Continuous Verb (hallja a zenét a fülével, mert nem süket)

SHE HEARS THE MUSIC WITH HER EARS.

– *She **is hearing** voices.* Normal Verb (hangokat hall, amit mások nem)

SHE HEARS SOMETHING OTHERS CANNOT HEAR. SHE IS HEARING VOICES IN HER MIND.

to look:

– *Nancy **looks** tired.* Non-Continuous Verb (Nancy fáradtnak néz ki/tűnik)

SHE SEEMS TIRED.

– *Farah **is looking** at the pictures.* Normal Verb (Farah nézi a képet)

SHE IS LOOKING WITH HER EYES.

to miss:

– *John **misses** Sally.* Non-Continuous Verb (Johnnak hiányzik Sally)

HE IS SAD BECAUSE SHE IS NOT THERE.

– *Debbie **is missing** her favorite TV program.* Normal Verb (Debbie kihagyja, elmulasztja a kedvenc műsorát, mert pl. nincs otthon)

SHE IS NOT THERE To SEE HER FAVORITE PROGRAM.

to see:

– *I see her.* Non-Continuous Verb (Látom őt, mert van szemem)

I SEE HER WITH MY EYES.

– *I am seeing the doctor.* Normal Verb (Meglátogatom az orvosomat, elmegyek hozzá)

I AM VISITING OR CONSULTING WITH A DOCTOR. (ALS- USED WITH DENTIST AND LAWYER.)

– *I am seeing her.* Normal Verb (Látogatom őt, mert kapcsolatban vagyunk)

I AM HAVING A RELATIONSHIP WITH HER.

– *He is seeing ghosts at night.* Normal Verb (Olyan eset, mint a hallásnál: szellemeket lát, amit mások nem.)

HE SEES SOMETHING OTHERS CANNOT SEE. FOR EXAMPLE GHOSTS, AURA, A VISION OF THE FUTURE, ETC.

to smell:

– *The coffee smells good.* Non-Continuous Verb (A kávénak jó illata van)

THE COFFEE HAS A GOOD SMELL.

– *I am smelling the flowers.* Normal Verb (Szagolom/beszippantom a virágok illatát.)

I AM SNIFFING THE FLOWERS TO SEE WHAT THEIR SMELL IS LIKE.

to taste:

– *The coffee **tastes** good.* Non-Continuous Verb (A kávénak jó íze van.)

THE COFFEE HAS A GOOD TASTE.

– *I **am tasting** the cake.* Normal Verb (Mégkóstolom, kóstolgom a tortát)

I AM TRYING THE CAKE TO SEE WHAT IT TASTES LIKE.

to think:

– *He **thinks** the test is easy.* Non-Continuous Verb (A tesztet könnyűnek találja)

HE CONSIDERS THE TEST TO BE EASY.

– *She **is thinking** about the question.* Normal Verb (Gondolkodik a kérdésen)

SHE IS PONDERING THE QUESTION, GOING OVER IT IN HER MIND.

to weigh:

– *The table **weighs** a lot.* Non-Continuous Verb (Az asztal nehéz.)

THE TABLE IS HEAVY.

– *She **is weighing** herself.* Normal Verb (Leméri magát.)

SHE IS DETERMINING HER WEIGHT.

NÉHÁNY IGE VÉGKÉPP ÖSSZEZAVARHAT:

to be:

– *Joe is American.* Non-Continuous Verb (Joe amerikai.)

JOE IS AN AMERICAN CITIZEN.

– *Joe is being very American.* Normal Verb (Joe nagyon úgy viselkedik, mint egy amerikai)

JOE IS BEHAVING LIKE A STEREOTYPICAL AMERICAN.

– *Joe is being very rude.* Normal Verb (Joe ma valahogy nagyon durva, közönséges. Általában nem ilyen)

JOE IS BEHAVING VERY RUDELY. USUALLY HE IS NOT RUDE.

– *Joe is being very formal.* Normal Verb (Joe nagyon hivatalos. Általában nem ilyen)

JOE IS BEHAVING VERY FORMALLY. USUALLY HE IS NOT FORMAL.

Figyelem! A „to be” folyamatos alakja ebben a formában nem gyakori. Általában akkor használjuk, ha a személy átmenetileg furcsán viselkedik.

to feel:

– *The massage feels great.* Non-Continuous Verb (A masszázs jól esik.)

THE MASSAGE HAS A PLEASING FEELING.

– *I don't feel well today.* Sometimes used as Non-Continuous Verb (Nem érzem jól magam, kicsit rosszul vagyok.)

I AM A LITTLE SICK.

I am not feeling well today. Sometimes used as Normal Verb (Na, itt van az az eset, amikor látszólag nem érthető a különbség. Mara djunk annyiban, hogy nincs különösebb eltérés a két használat között.) I AM A LITTLE SICK.

Past Continuous – Folyamatos múlt idő

Formája: was/were + ige ING-es alakja

Példák:

- You were studying when she called. (Épp tanultál amikor ő hívott.)
- Were you studying when she called?
- You were not studying when she called.

A folyamatos múlt időt akkor használjuk, ha azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy egy hosszan tartó cselekvést egy másik (rövidebb), félbeszakít. A rövidebb cselekvést ilyenkor egyszerű múlt idővel fejezzük ki. Úgy szoktam ezt érzékeltetni, hogy a magyar igekötős igék pl. belépett, felnevetett, becsengetett stb. kerülnek egyszerű múlt időbe.

Példák:

- I was watching TV when she called.
- When the phone rang, she was writing a letter.
- While we were having the picnic, it started to rain.
- What were you doing when the earthquake started?
- I was listening to my iPod, so I didn't hear the fire alarm.
- While John was sleeping last night, someone stole his car.
- While I was writing the email, the computer suddenly went off.

- A: What were you doing when you broke your leg?
B: I was snowboarding.

Ha a múlt egy adott időpontjában éppen csináltam valamit, akkor is a folyamatos múlt időt használom.

Példák:

- Last night at 6 PM, I was eating dinner.
- At midnight, we were still driving through the desert.
- Yesterday at this time, I was sitting at my desk at work.

Fontos!

Az alábbi mondatokban az egyszerű múlt idő és a folyamatos múlt idő használatának jelentésbeli különbségeit érzékelheted.

Példák:

- Last night at 6 PM, I ate dinner.
(I started eating at 6 PM. Vagyis, 6-kor kezdtem el enni.)
- Last night at 6 PM, I was eating dinner.
(I started earlier; and at 6 PM, I was in the process of eating dinner. Értsd: már korábban elkezdtem, szóval 6-kor már bőven ettem.)

Amikor két cselekvés egyidejűleg, párhuzamosan zajlik. Általában egy mondatban szerepel a két dolog. A „while”-t itt előszeretettel alkalmazzuk.

Példák:

- I was studying while he was making dinner. Amíg én tanultam, ő vacsorát készített.
- While Ellen was reading, Tim was watching television.
- Were you listening while he was talking?
- I wasn't paying attention while I was writing the letter, so I made several mistakes.
- What were you doing while you were waiting?
- Thomas wasn't working, and I wasn't working either
- They were eating dinner, discussing their plans, and having a good time.

Hangulati hatáskeltésként gyakran használjuk a folyamatos múlt időt. Figyeld meg:

Példák:

- When I walked into the office, several people were busily typing, some were talking on the phones, the boss was yelling directions, and customers were waiting to be helped. One customer was yelling at a secretary and waving his hands. Others were complaining to each other about the bad service.
- Amikor beléptem az irodába, jónéhány ember szorgosan gépelt, néhányan telefonon beszéltek, a főnök ordítva parancsolgatott, és vevők várták, hogy valaki kiszolgálja őket. Egy vevő a titkárnővel ordított, kezeivel hadonászva. Mások a rossz kiszolgálásra panaszkodtak.

Ez most ismerős lesz: ha a folyamatos múltat összevegyítjük egy kis “always” vagy “constantly” szavakkal akkor azt fejezhetjük ki, hogy valami nagyon irritált vagy sokkolt minket hajdanán.

Példák:

- She was always coming to class late
- He was constantly talking. He annoyed (idegesített) everyone.
- I didn't like them because they were always complaining (panaszkodtak).

Hát, ennyi. Jöhetnek a feladatok.

Grammar

When several adjectives modify the same noun, there is a particular order they must follow in English. Certain adjectives come before others. (Not all have to be used in the same sentence.)

See the chart below

Quantifier	Article, Possession, Demonstrative	Number Sequence	Quality	Size	Shape	Color	Origin	Material
Some of	the, a, an,	three	wonderful		round	red	Japanese	metal
All of	this, that	second	clean		square	yellow	Italian	ceramic
Both	my, his	next	large		flat	black	French	wood

Examples:

Some of the hungry gentlemen

The last great civilization

Ten big round metal rings

The beautiful Japanese ceramic vase

Either of the small green apples

My three lovely daughters

An interesting wooden statue

The third red plastic container

John Buchan Thirty – Nine Steps

CHAPTER ONE

THE MAN WHO DIED

I returned from the City about three o'clock on that May afternoon pretty well disgusted with life. I had been three months in the Old Country, and was fed up with it. If anyone had told me a year ago that I would have been feeling like that I should have laughed at him; but there was the fact. The weather made me liverish, the talk of the ordinary Englishman made me sick, I couldn't get enough exercise, and the amusements of London seemed as flat as soda-water that has been standing in the sun.

Richard Hannay, I kept telling myself, you have got into the wrong ditch, my friend, and you had better climb out. It made me bite my lips to think of the plans I had been building up those last years in Bulawayo. I had got my pile – not one of the big ones, but good enough for me; and I had figured out all kinds of ways of enjoying myself. My father had brought me out from Scotland at the age of six, and I had never been home since; so England was a sort of Arabian Nights to me, and I counted on stopping there for the rest of my days. But from the first I was disappointed with it. In about a week I was tired of seeing sights, and in less than a month I had had enough of restaurants and theatres and racemeetings. I had no real pal to go about with, which probably explains things. Plenty of people invited me to their houses, but they didn't seem much interested in me. They would fling me a question or two about South Africa, and then get on their own affairs. A lot of Imperialist ladies asked me to tea to meet schoolmasters from New Zealand and editors from Vancouver, and that was the dismalest business of all. Here was I, thirty-seven years old, sound in wind and limb, with enough money to have a good time, yawning my head off all day. I had just about settled to clear out and get back to the veld, for I was the best bored man in the United Kingdom.

That afternoon I had been worrying my brokers about investments to give my mind something to work on, and on my way home I turned into my club – rather a pothouse, which took in Colonial members. I had a long drink, and read the evening papers. They were full of the row in the Near East, and there was an article about Karolides, the Greek Premier. I rather fancied the chap.

From all accounts he seemed the one big man in the show; and he played a straight game too, which was more than could be said for most of them. I gathered that they hated him pretty blackly in Berlin and Vienna, but that we were going to stick by him, and one paper said that he was the only barrier between Europe and Armageddon. I remember wondering if I could get a job in those parts. It struck me that Albania was the sort of place that might keep a man from awning. About six o'clock I went home, dressed, dined at the Cafe Royal, and turned into a music-hall. It was a silly show, all capering women and monkey-faced men, and I did not stay long. The night was fine and clear as I walked back to the flat I had hired near Portland Place. The crowd surged past me on the pavements, busy and chattering, and I envied the people for having something to do.

These shop-girls and clerks and dandies and policemen had some interest in life that kept them going. I gave half-acrown to a beggar because I saw him yawn; he was a fellow-sufferer. At Oxford Circus I looked up into the spring sky and I made a vow. I would give the Old Country another day to fit me into something; if nothing happened, I would take the next boat for the Cape.

My flat was the first floor in a new block behind Langham Place. There was a common staircase, with a porter and a liftman at the entrance, but there was no restaurant or anything of that sort, and each flat was quite shut off from the others. I hate servants on the premises, so I had a fellow to look after me who came in by the day. He arrived before eight o'clock every morning and used to depart at seven, for I never dined at home.

I was just fitting my key into the door when I noticed a man at my elbow. I had not seen him approach, and the sudden appearance made me start. He was a slim man, with a short brown beard and small, gimlety blue eyes. I recognized him as the occupant of a flat on the top floor, with whom I had passed the time of day on the stairs. Can I speak to you? he said. May I come in for a minute? He was steadying his voice with an effort, and his hand was pawing my arm. I got my door open and motioned him in. No sooner was he over the threshold than he made a dash for my back room, where I used to smoke and write my letters. Then he bolted back.

Is the door locked? he asked feverishly, and he fastened the chain with his own hand. I'm very sorry, he said humbly. It's a mighty liberty, but you looked the kind of man who would understand. I've had you in my mind all this week when things got troublesome. Say, will you do me a good turn?

I'll listen to you, I said. That's all I'll promise. I was getting worried by the antics of this nervous little chap. There was a tray of drinks on a table beside him, from which he filled himself a stiff whisky-and-soda. He drank it off in three gulps, and cracked the glass as he set it down.

Pardon, he said, I'm a bit rattled tonight. You see, I happen at this moment to be dead.

I sat down in an armchair and lit my pipe.

What does it feel like? I asked. I was pretty certain that I had to deal with a madman. A smile flickered over his drawn face. I'm not mad – yet. Say, Sir, I've been watching you, and I reckon you're a cool customer. I reckon, too, you're an honest man, and not afraid of playing a bold hand. I'm going to confide in you. I need help worse than any man ever needed it, and I want to know if I can count you in.

Unit 1 Writing – Family

Write a letter to your friend in which you tell him/her about a situation happened in your family with your grandmother. She is ill and now she has to live with you for a while. Describe this situation in 150–200 words to your friend. (Write about generation gaps, adults' problem versus youngsters' problem and habit sin this case.)

Begin as follows:

Dear Sabrina,

I have received your last letter in which you asked me about me and my family. Thank you for your question. I hope you are doing well.

Now,...

Unit 1 Speaking – Family

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.

Begin as follows: In this colour picture I can see...

Prompts:

- large/ small family
- generation gap
- generations living under one roof
- full time
- part time
- to help each other
- to share problems
- wage-earners
- old-age pensioner
- to be in close contact with
- strong family ties
- supportive
- burden
- upbringing
- practical
- there is no way
- to make a career



(resource: <http://www.olympialiquor.ca/blogs/valentines-day-family-day/>)

Vocabulary: Family

Vocabulary: Family

to condemn	ítél
to claim	állít vm-t
to demand	követel
to appeal	fellebbez,
to refuse	visszautasít
to brand	megbélyegez
consent	beleegyezés
to sue	beperel
ridiculous	nevetségos
hilarious	nevetségos
child care allowance system	GYES rendszere
family allowance	családi pótlék
breadwinner	kenyérkereső
make ends meet	boldogul, kijön a pénzből
fringe/social benefit	szociális juttatás
broken family	kettészakadt család
to be alive	életben van
single	egyedülálló
to be childless	gyermektelen
adolescent/teenager	tinédzser
to support	ellát, támogat
bachelor	aggregény
to go out with somebody (sy)	járni vk-vel
to co-habit with sy	együtt élni vk-vel (házasság előtt)
to split up	szakítani
a spouse	házastárs
wedding	esküvő
honeymoon	mézesetek
one/single parent family	egyszülős család

to be pregnant	terhes
to be on maternity leave	GYES-en lenni
to bring up/raise/rear children	gyerekeket nevelni
adult/grown up	felnőtt
middle- aged	középkorú
elderly person	idős ember
pensioner	nyugdíjas
to live /get by on 50. 000 a month	50 ezerből élni
to be unemployed	munkanélküli
family budget	családi kassza/költségvetés
income	bevétel
outgoings	kiadások
understanding	megértő
caring	gondoskodó
cute	aranyos
to quarrel	veszekedni
to argue about something (sg)	vitatkozni
to discuss	megvitatni
breadwinner	kenyérkereső
to trust	megbízni vk-ben
to respect	tisztelni
to obey	engedelmeskedni
reliable	megbízható
to treat	kezelti vk-t
to give orders	parancsolgatni
to turn to somebody (sy) for advice	tanácsért fordulni vk-hez
to restore	visszaállít

Teens: Alcohol And Other Drugs

Experimentation with alcohol and drugs during adolescence is common. Unfortunately, teenagers often don't see the link between their actions today and the consequences tomorrow. They also have a tendency to feel indestructible and immune to the problems that others experience.

Using alcohol and tobacco at a young age has negative health effects. While some teens will experiment and stop, or continue to use occasionally, without significant problems. Others will develop a dependency, moving on to more dangerous drugs and causing significant harm to themselves and possibly others. It is difficult to know which teens will experiment and stop and which will develop serious problems. Teenagers at risk for developing serious alcohol and drug problems include those:

- with a family history of substance use disorders
- who are depressed
- who have low self-esteem, and
- who feel like they don't fit in or are out of the mainstream

Teenagers abuse a variety of drugs, both legal and illegal. Legally available drugs include alcohol, prescribed medications, inhalants (fumes from glues, aerosols, and solvents) and over-the-counter cough, cold, sleep, and diet medications. The most commonly used illegal drugs are marijuana (pot), stimulants (cocaine, crack, and speed), LSD, PCP, opiates, heroin, and designer drugs (Ecstasy). The use of illegal drugs is increasing, especially among young teens. The average age of first marijuana use is 14, and alcohol use can start before age 12. The use of marijuana and alcohol in high school has become common.

Drug use is associated with a variety of negative consequences, including increased risk of serious drug use later in life, school failure, and poor judgment which may put teens at risk for accidents, violence, unplanned and unsafe sex, and suicide.

Parents can prevent their children from using drugs by talking to them about drugs, open communication, role modeling, responsible behavior, and recognizing if problems are developing.

WARNING SIGNS OF TEENAGE ALCOHOL AND DRUG USE MAY INCLUDE:

Physical: Fatigue, repeated health complaints, red and glazed eyes, and a lasting cough.

Emotional: personality change, sudden mood changes, irritability, irresponsible behavior, low self-esteem, poor judgment, depression, and a general lack of interest.

Family: starting arguments, breaking rules, or withdrawing from the family.

School: decreased interest, negative attitude, drop in grades, many absences, truancy, and discipline problems.

Social problems: new friends who are less interested in standard home and school activities, problems with the law, and changes to less conventional styles in dress and music.

Some of the warning signs listed above can also be signs of other problems. Parents may recognize signs of trouble and possible use of alcohol and other drugs with their teenager. If you have concerns you may want to consult a physician to rule out physical causes of the warning signs. This should often be followed or accompanied by a comprehensive evaluation by a child and adolescent psychiatrist or mental health professional.

English – a world language

340 million people speak English worldwide. (1st Chinese – 1.2 billion, 2nd Spanish – 360 million, 9th German – 98 million)

It's not clear how many people around the world use English as a second language. Numbers vary from 350 million to one billion.

English is spoken in the following countries:

Australia, Botswana, Brunei, Cameroon, Canada, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Fiji, The Gambia, Guyana, India, Ireland, Israel, Lesotho, Liberia, Malaysia, Micronesia, Namibia, Nauru, New Zealand, Palau, Papua New Guinea, Samoa, Seychelles, Sierra Leone, Singapore, Solomon Islands, Somalia, South Africa, Suriname, Swaziland, Tonga, UK, USA, Vanuati, Zimbabwe and many Caribbean states

The following words are used in American English and were taken from German. Doppelgänger, Kindergarten, Poltergeist, Rucksack, Wanderjahr, Weltanschauung, Weltschmerz, Zeitgeist

Another German word commonly used in American English is “Gesundheit”.

No one in the USA really knows what it means, but you say it after someone sneezes, just like in German speaking countries.

Thanks to Mark.

Reading comprehension – Social networking sites

SOCIAL NETWORKS

Do the names MySpace, Facebook, Orkut, etc. ring a bell? They probably do because they are some of the most popular sites on the internet today. These sites are all called 'social networking' sites because they help people meet and discuss things online. Each of these social networking sites has its own strengths: MySpace is especially popular among teenagers, Facebook is popular with college age people, Orkut is especially loved in Brazil, and CyWorld is the site to visit in South Korea. The common thread between all of these social networks is that they provide a place for people to interact, rather than a place to go to read or listen to 'content'.

WEB 2.0

Social networks are considered to be web 2.0. What does this mean? To understand this, it's important to understand what the original web did (often called web 1.0). Back in the nineties, the internet – or web – was a place to go to read articles, listen to music, get information, etc. Most people didn't contribute to the sites. They just 'browsed' the sites and took advantage of the information or resources provided. Of course, some people did create their own sites. However, creating a site was difficult. You needed to know basic HTML coding (the original language the internet uses to 'code' pages). It certainly wasn't something most people wanted to do as it could take hours to get a basic page just right. Things began to get easier when blogs (from web log) were introduced. With blogs, many more people began writing 'posts', as well as commenting on other people's blogs.

MYSPACE SURPRISES EVERYBODY

In 2003 a site named MySpace took the internet by storm. It was trying to mimic the most popular features of Friendster, the first social networking site. It quickly became popular among young users and the rest was history. Soon everyone was trying to develop a social networking site. The sites didn't provide 'content' to people, they helped people create, communicate and share what they loved including music, images and videos. The key to the success of these sites is that they provide a platform on which users create the content. This is very different from the beginning of the internet which focused on providing 'content' for people to enjoy.

KEY TO SUCCESS

Relying on users to create content is the key to the success of web 2.0 companies. Besides the social networking sites discussed here, other huge success stories include: Wikipedia, Digg.com and the latest success – Twitter. All of these companies rely on the desire of users to communicate with each other, thereby creating the ‚content’ that others want to consume.

KEY VOCABULARY

social network

to ring a bell

site

strength – weakness

common thread

to interact

content

nineties

internet – web

to contribute

to browse a site

to create

code/coding

blog – web log

post

to comment on

to take by storm

to mimic

the rest was history

platform

to consume.

Slang

Have a look at these words:

SLANG	MEANING
wanna	want to, want a
oughta	ought to
lotta	lot of
gonna	going
gotcha	I got you
gimme	give me
dunno	don't know

Crime

to get high	elszállni
euphoria	eufória
inhibition	gátlás
joint	spangli
hallucinogenic	hallucinogén
amphetamine	amfetamin
narcotic	kábítószer
heroin	heroin
addiction	szenvedély
drug addict	kábítószer függő
alcohol addict	alkoholista
violent	erőszakos
violence	erőszak
to legalise	legalizál
to cause harm	kárt okoz
brutality	brutalitás
to consume	fogyaszt
to punish	megbüntet
to cure	meggyógyít
rehabilitation centre	drogelvonó
drug-dealer	drogkereskedő
to sentence	elítél
to threaten	fenyeget
to influence	befolyásol
drug abuse	kábítószerrel való visszaélés
to resist temptation	ellenáll a kísértésnek
forbidden	tiltott
to take sth into consideration	figyelembe vesz
to prevent	megelőz
hangover	másnaposság

gambling	szerencsejáték
to rape	megerőszakol
death penalty	halálbüntetés
capital punishment	halálbüntetés
to imprison	bebörtönöz
spy	kém
innocent	ártatlan
guilty	bűnös
to reach the verdict	meghozni ítéletet
jury	esküdtszék
serial murder	sorozatgyilkos
discharge	felmentés, szabadlábra helyezés
probation	feltételes szabadlábra helyezés
assassination	merénylet
stabbing	késelés
smuggling	csempészés
fraud	csalás
bribery	vesztegetés
blackmail	zsarolás
arson	szándékos tűzgyújtás
embezzlement	sikkasztás, hűtlen kezelés
hijack	eltérítés
pickpocket	zsebtolvaj
shoplifter	tolvaj

Festivals

to commemorate	megemlékezik
struggle	küzdelem
cruse	agyagedény
intact	sértetlen, ép
miracle	csoda
blessing	áldás
to kindle	kigyúl, meggyújt
to behead	lefejez
to flee	menekül
stake	tét
saving bonds	meztakarítási kötvények
holy	szent
nativity	Jézus születése
to persuade	rávesz, meggyőz
to expose pregnancy	napvilágra hozza a terhességet
shepherd	juhász
census	népszámlálás
mistletoe	fagyöngy
to bury	temet, eltemet
carol singers	karácsonyi énekesek
penitential	bűnbánat
wreath	koszorú
consumerism	fogyasztó (vásárlással kapcsolatos)
feast	lakoma
to ban	tilt, betilt
in excess	túlsúlyban
boozy celebration	részeges ünneplés
remnant	maradvány, maradék
lull	csillapodás, csend
literally	szó szerint

to be enlightened	megvilágosodik
to attain	elér, megszerez
supreme wisdom	legfőbb bölcsesség
compassion	irgalom, könyörület
to gain	kap, szerez
gaiety	vidámság
lantern	lámpás
to release	elenged
cage	kalitka
monk	szerzetes
greed	kapzsiság, mohóság
hatred	gyűlölködés
ignorance	tudatlanság
chain	lánc
to reveal	feltár, megmutat
fasting	böjtölés
exempt	kivétel
to abstain	tartózkodik vm-től
adversely	károsan
to affirm	megerősít
commitment	elkötelezettség
harvest	szüret
earthenware	agyagáru
exile	száműzetés
dice	dobókocka

Climate Change: Basic Information

CLIMATE CHANGE IS HAPPENING



Our Earth is warming.

Earth's average temperature has risen by 1.4°F over the past century, and is projected to rise another 2 to 11.5°F over the next hundred years. Small changes in the average temperature of the planet can translate to large and potentially dangerous shifts in climate and weather.

The evidence is clear.

Rising global temperatures have been accompanied by changes in weather and climate. Many places have seen changes in rainfall, resulting in more floods, droughts, or intense rain, as well as more frequent and severe heat waves. The planet's oceans and glaciers have also experienced some big changes – oceans are warming and becoming more acidic, ice caps are melting, and sea levels are rising. As these and other changes become more pronounced in the coming decades, they will likely present challenges to our society and our environment.

Learn more about the signs of climate change in the United States.

HUMANS ARE LARGELY RESPONSIBLE FOR RECENT CLIMATE CHANGE



Over the past century, human activities have released large amounts of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. The majority of greenhouse gases come from burning fossil fuels to produce energy, although deforestation, industrial processes, and some agricultural practices also emit gases into the atmosphere. Greenhouse gases act like a blanket around Earth, trapping energy in the atmosphere and causing it to warm. This phenomenon is called the greenhouse effect and is natural and necessary to support life on Earth. However, the buildup of greenhouse gases can change Earth's climate and result in dangerous effects to human health and welfare and to ecosystems.

The choices we make today will affect the amount of greenhouse gases we put in the atmosphere in the near future and for years to come.

Learn more about the causes of climate change.

Climate change affects everyone

Our lives are connected to the climate.

Human societies have adapted to the relatively stable climate we have enjoyed since the last ice age which ended several thousand years ago. A warming climate will bring changes that can affect our water supplies, agriculture, power and transportation systems, the natural environment, and even our own health and safety.

Some changes to the climate are unavoidable.

Carbon dioxide can stay in the atmosphere for nearly a century, so Earth will continue to warm in the coming decades. The warmer it gets, the greater the risk for more severe changes to the climate and Earth's system. Although it's difficult to predict the exact impacts of climate change, what's clear is that the climate we are accustomed to is no longer a reliable guide for what to expect in the future.

We can reduce the risks we will face from climate change. By making choices that reduce greenhouse gas pollution, and preparing for the changes that are already underway, we can reduce risks from climate change. Our decisions today will shape the world our children and grandchildren will live in.

Learn more about the impacts of climate change and adapting to change.

We can make a difference



You can take action.

You can take steps at home, on the road, and in your office to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and the risks associated with climate change. Many of these steps can save you money; some, such as walking or biking to work can even improve your health! You can also get involved on a local or state level to support energy efficiency, clean energy programs, or other climate programs. Learn more about what you can do.

Calculate your carbon footprint and find ways to reduce your emissions through simple everyday actions.

EPA and other federal agencies are taking action.

EPA is working to protect the health and welfare of Americans through common sense measures to reduce greenhouse gas pollution and to help communities prepare for climate change.

Environment

to be threatened	fenyegetve lenni
depletion	vékonyodás
ozone layer	ózonréteg
global warming	globális felmelegedés
to melt	olvad
polar ice cap	sarki jégtakaró
species	faj
extinction	kihalás
endangered	veszélyeztetett
contamination	szennyezés
gaseous	gáznemű
waste	hulladék
by-product	melléktermék
pollutant	szennyező
carbon monoxide	szén-monoxid
carbon dioxide	szén-dioxid
power plant	atomerőmű
incinerator	szeméttégető
hazardous	veszélyes
to alter	megváltoztat
to meet the requirements	megfelel a követelményeknek
sewage	szennyvíz
sewer	csatorna
to leak	szivárog
fatal	halálos
to emit	kibocsát
costly	költséges
prevention	megelőzés
to litter	szemetel
rubbish	szemét
waste selection	hulladék-elkülönítés
rudimentary	kezdetleges
organic	szerves
household	háztartás
to recycle	újrahasznosít

to convert	átalakít
landfill	szeméttlerakó
to surround	körbevesz
habitation	lakóhely
atmosphere	atmoszféra
to retain	megtart
vital	alapvető
greenhouse effect	üvegházhatás
to reflect	visszaver
to absorb	elnyel
to radiate	sugárzik
renewable	megújítható
to a large extent	nagymértékben
to tackle the problem	legyőzi a problémát
activist	aktivista
voluntary	önkéntes
to be devoted to	odaadó
conservation	megőrzés

Medical English vocabulary

English words and phrases connected with injury, illness and going to the doctor.

Boil = infected swelling with liquid inside it: “You’ll need to go to the doctor to have that boil lanced.” (lance – puncture and clean) Lump = swelling: “I have a strange lump on my arm. I wonder what caused it.”

Rash = allergic reaction which makes your skin go red: “When she used the soap her skin came out in a rash.”

Scab = dry skin that forms over a cut: “Don’t pick at your scab – you might make it bleed.” Spot = red mark on the skin (much smaller than a boil): “When he was a teenager he had a lot of spots.”

Swelling = an irritation or infection that makes the skin rise: “After the wasp stung her, she had a swelling on her leg for days.”

The following words can be used as nouns and verbs:

Bruise = when the skin goes blue and yellow: “She fell down the stairs and bruised her arm.” “He has a bruise just under his eye.”

Bump = when you hit yourself and get a slight swelling:

“Ow! I bumped my head on the desk!”

“It’s only a little bump – nothing serious.”

Cut = when something sharp breaks your skin and you bleed: “He cut himself badly on the bread knife.”

“Fortunately, nobody was seriously injured in the accident. There were only a few cuts and bruises.”

“She got a nasty cut on her hand while she was diving.”

Gash = deep cut: “He gashed his hand badly on a piece of broken glass.”

“That’s a nasty gash. You might need stitches.”

Graze = slight cut – not enough to bleed much: “When she was little, she was always grazing her knee.”

“I got a small graze on my hand when I fell onto some gravel.”

Itch = when a part of your body makes you want to scratch it: “My eyes are itching – this atmosphere is too smoky for me.”

“I’ve got a terrible itch where the mosquito bit me.”

Scratch = like a graze, but more painful: “The cat scratched me – it stings a little.”

“He was picking berries and got a couple of scratches from the thorns.” Sprain = twist a part of your body: “She sprained her ankle when she slipped on the ice.” “My ankle looks swollen, but it’s only a minor sprain.”

GOING TO THE DOCTOR

The first time you visit a new doctor, you should talk about your **medical history** – the illnesses you have had, any operations you have had and so on.

Your doctor might want to give you a check-up. A **check-up** will include **monitoring your blood pressure**, as high blood pressure is serious and can lead to **life-threatening** conditions. Your doctor will probably also **take your pulse** to check that your **heart rate** is normal.

A doctor uses a **stethoscope** to listen to your breathing – particularly if you have a **heart or chest infection**, or a condition such as **asthma**.

Of course, you can also visit the doctor for a huge range of other reasons. Children need to have their injections and if you are going abroad on holiday, you might also need to have injections against **infectious diseases**. In winter, you can also get a flu **vaccine** so that you won't get **the flu**.

If you need medication, a doctor will write you a **prescription**. You can get your **prescription filled** at a chemist.

For more serious medical conditions, you can get a **referral to a clinic** or a hospital. You might need **blood tests** done, or you might need an **X-ray**, or you might need to **see a specialist**.

UNIT 2.

ppt bemutatóanyag – Past Simple vs. Past Continuous



DUNAÚJVÁROSI EGYETEM
UNIVERSITY OF DUNAÚJVÁROS



Unit 2: Past Simple vs. Past Continuous

Made by Orsolya Bartal
University of Dunaújváros
HASIT



ONLINE STUDIUM
www.onlinestudium.hu

Past Simple I.

V₂

- Usage: The action started and finished in the past.

Eg.:

+ I lost my keys last night in the disco.

- I didn't lose my keys.

? Why did you lose your keys last night?

Time adverbials: yesterday, the day before yesterday, last night, last week, AGO

Past Simple II.

You can also use Simple Past: actions happening one after the other.

Eg. When he **left** university, he **started** to work in China and **got** married in 2010.

Some more examples

We **were** in Germany twice last year.

She **wasn't** with us in the camp.

Why **were** you there last Sunday?

She saw me a few hours ago.

What did you tell her about it?

John didn't enjoy the conference on Saturday.

Past Continuous

was/were+V_{ing}

Usage:

1. *Something happened continuously in a certain period of time in the past.*

Eg. I was cleaning the carpets from 3 to 4 yesterday.

2. *Something happened continuously in the past when an action occurred. (Past continuous/Past Simple)*

Eg. The doctor was examining the patients when the nurse came in the room.

3. *Two actions was happening continuously, parallel in the same at nearly the same time. (Both Past Continuous)*

Eg. **While** we were dancing, they were drinking cocktails.

Some more examples

She was cooking dinner at 7 o'clock.

When I *arrived* they *were doing* some exercises.

While Mary *was driving*, her husband *was sleeping*.

I *was waiting* for you from 5 to 6 in the afternoon.

What *were you doing* at that time yesterday?



DUNAÚJVÁROSI EGYETEM
UNIVERSITY OF DUNAÚJVÁROS



Thank you for your attention.



ONLINE STUDIUM
www.onlinestudium.hu

Simple Past

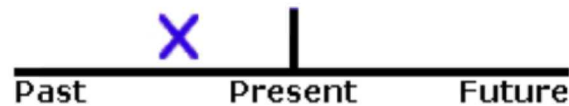
FORM

[*VERB+ed*] or *irregular verbs* Examples:

- You **called** Debbie.
- **Did** you **call** Debbie?
- You **did not call** Debbie.

Complete List of Simple Past Forms

USE 1 COMPLETED ACTION IN THE PAST



Use the Simple Past to express the idea that an action started and finished at a specific time in the past. Sometimes, the speaker may not actually mention the specific time, but they do have one specific time in mind.

Examples:

I **saw** a movie yesterday.

I **didn't see** a play yesterday.

Last year, I **traveled** to Japán.

Last year, I **didn't travel** to Korea.

Did you have dinner last night?

She **washed** her car.

He didn't wash his car.

USE 2 A SERIES OF COMPLETED ACTIONS



We use the Simple Past to list a series of completed actions in the past. These actions happen 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and so on.

Examples:

- I **finished** work, **walked** to the beach, and **found** a nice place to swim.
- He **arrived** from the airport at 8:00, **checked** into the hotel at 9:00, and **met** the others at 10:00.
- **Did** you **add** flour, **pour** in the milk, and then **add** the eggs?

USE 3 DURATION IN PAST



The Simple Past can be used with a duration which starts and stops in the past. A duration is a longer action often indicated by expressions such as: for two years, for five minutes, all day, all year, etc.

Examples:

- I lived in Brazil for two years.
- Shauna studied Japanese for five years.
- They sat at the beach all day.

They did not stay at the party the entire time.

We talked on the phone for thirty minutes.

A: How long did you wait for them? B: We waited for one hour.

USE 4 HABITS IN THE PAST



The Simple Past can also be used to describe a habit which stopped in the past. It can have the same meaning as “used to.” To make it clear that we are talking about a habit, we often add expressions such as: always, often, usually, never, when I was a child, when I was younger, etc.

Examples:

I studied French when I was a child.

He played the violin.

He didn't play the piano.

Did you play a musical instrument when you were a kid?

She worked at the movie theater after school.

They never went to school, they always skipped class.

USE 5 PAST FACTS OR GENERALIZATIONS



The Simple Past can also be used to describe past facts or generalizations which are no longer true. As in USE 4 above, this use of the Simple Past is quite similar to the expression “used to.”

Examples:

- She **was** shy as a child, but now she is very outgoing.
- He **didn't like** tomatoes before.
- **Did you live** in Texas when you **were** a kid?
- People **paid** much more to make cell phone calls in the past.

IMPORTANT When-Clauses Happen First

Clauses are groups of words which have meaning but are often not complete sentences. Some clauses begin with the word “when” such as “when I dropped my pen...” or “when class began...” These clauses are called when-clauses, and they are very important. The examples below contain when-clauses.

Examples:

- **When I paid her one dollar**, she answered my question.
- She answered my question **when I paid her one dollar**.

When-clauses are important because they always happen first when both clauses are in the Simple Past. Both of the examples above mean the same thing: first, I paid her one dollar, and then, she answered my question. It is not important whether “when I paid her one dollar” is at the beginning of the sentence or at the end of the sentence. However, the example below has a different meaning. First, she answered my question, and then, I paid her one dollar.

Example:

- I paid her one dollar **when she answered my question**.

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You **just** called Debbie.
- Did you **just** call Debbie?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- Tom **repaired** the car. *Active*
- The car **was repaired** by Tom. *Passive*

(forrás: <http://www.englishpage.com/verbpage/simplepast.html>)

Simple Past– Egyszerű Múlt Idő

Az egyszerű múlt idő szerintem egy tényleg egyszerűen megérthető és használható igeidő, eltekintve attól az egyszerű tényről, hogy a rendhagyó igeik múlt idejű alakját be kell bírni.

Formája:

Állító mondat:

Az igehez egy -ed végződést adunk, de a rendhagyó igeik múlt idejű alakját külön meg kell tanulni.

Tagadás:

A „did+not” vagyis „didn’t” szócskával tagadunk. Vigyázni kell, hogy tagadáskor az igtét már nem kell múlt időbe tenni, mert a „did” úgyis jelzi az ige idejét.

Kérdés:

A kérdést is a did-del oldjuk meg. Ne felejtsük a sorrendet! Eldöntendő kérdés esetén did+alany+ ige stb.

Kérdőszavas kérdés esetén ugyanez, csak a kérdőszó az első helyre kerül.

Példák:

- I helped Debbie.
- **Did** you help Debbie?
- You **did not help** Debbie.
- **Why** didn’t you help her?

Használata:

AZ EGYSZERŰ JELEN IDŐT AKKOR HASZNÁLJUK, HA:

– a cselekvés a múltban kezdődött és fejeződött be és ennek meg is van az időpontja. Néha előfordul, hogy a beszélő nem mondja ki a cselekvés idejét, de azért azt ő nagyon jól tudja.

Példák:

– I **saw** a movie yesterday.

– I **didn't see** a play yesterday.

– Last year, I **traveled** to Japan.

– Last year, I **didn't travel** to Korea. DUNAÚJVÁROSI EGYETEM

– **Did you have** dinner last night?

– She **washed** her car.

– **He didn't wash** his car.

– a cselekmények egymást követték a múltban.

Példák:

– I **finished** work, **walked** to the beach, and **found** a nice place to swim.

– He **arrived** from the airport at 8:00, **checked** into the hotel at 9:00, and **met** the others at 10:00.

– **Did you add** flour, **pour** in the milk, and then **add** the eggs? (ezeknél a tevékenységeknél az a fontos, hogy egymás után követték egymást)

– azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy a cselekvés egy hosszabb időtartamon keresztül történt (szigorúan a múltban, vagyis akkor kezdődött és akkor ért véget). Ezt az időtartamot olyan kifejezések is jelzik, mint: for two years (két éven keresztül), for five minutes, all day (egész nap), all year, stb.

Példák:

I **lived** in Brazil for two years.

Shauna **studied** Japanese for five years.

They **sat** at the beach all day.

They **did not stay** at the party the entire time (nem voltak végig a partin).

We **talked** on the phone for thirty minutes.

A: How long **did** you **wait** for them?

B: We **waited** for one hour.

múltbéli szokásokat fejezünk ki. Ugyanúgy, mint a „used to” kifejezéssel. Fontos, hogy ez a „szokás” csak a múltra igaz. Azért, hogy a hallgatónk ezt megértse, gyakran használjuk az : always, often, usually, never, when I was a child, when I was younger, stb. szavakkal. A „used to” -ról annyit illik tudni, hogy tagadása „didn't use to” és kifejezetten arra utal, hogy hajdanán valaha csináltam, vagy nem csináltam valamit, de ez már nincs így. (pld. I used to smoke= Valaha dohányoztam, de már nem.)

Példák:

- I **studied** French when I was a child.
- He **played** the violin.
- He **didn't play** the piano.
- **Did you play** a musical instrument when you were a kid?
- She **worked** at the movie theater after school.
- They never **went** to school, they always **skipped** class.

- múltbéli tényeket vagy általánosításokat akarunk kifejezni, amelyek már nem igazak (ez hasonló a fenti magyarázathoz).

Példák:

- She **was** shy as a child, but now she is very outgoing.
- He **didn't like** tomatoes before.
- **Did you live** in Texas when you **were** a kid?
- People **paid** much more to make cell phone calls in the past.

Az időhatározók elhelyezéséről néhány példa erejéig: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Példák:

- You **just** called Debbie.
- Did you **just** call Debbie?

A LÉTIGE HASZNÁLATA

Nem beszéltünk arról, mi van, ha a létigét kell múlt időbe tennünk. Az alábbi táblázat megmutatja ezt. Tudod, én voltam, te voltál stb. DUNAÚJVÁROSI EGYETEM

Jelen	Múlt	Múlt -tagadás	Múlt -kérdés	Wh - kérdés
I am/ I'm	I was	I wasn't	Was I...	Why was I
You are	You were	You weren't	Were you ...	Where were you...
S/He/It is	She was	She wasn't	Was she...	Where was she
We are	We were	We weren't	Were we ...	How were we ...
You are	You were	You weren't	Were you ...	How were you...
They are	They were	They weren't	Were they	What were they

Példák:

- They were here yesterday and wanted to see you.
- She wasn't kind at all.
- Were you talented at music, when you were a child?
- Where were they on holiday last year?

British Universities

Universities in Britain are a **magnet** for **overseas** students. There are currently over 200,000 from outside Britain studying at British universities. The largest single group is Chinese students. There are currently 50,000 in the UK. The British government expects the total number of overseas students to be around 900,000 by 2020, and also thinks that a quarter of these will be Chinese.

But why is the UK such a popular destination for university students? Well, the quality of your course is **guaranteed**. All courses are **assessed** by an independent system, so you can be assured that your course is officially approved and has wide international **recognition**.

The British education system is very flexible in order to provide for the needs of a modern, complex society. It is also **cost-effective**. **Degree** courses are usually shorter and more intensive than in other countries. There are lots of **scholarships** available. You normally need 3 A-levels, which are the exams taken by people leaving school at 18, in order to enter an undergraduate degree course. You also need an **IELTS** score of at least 5.5, but many universities offer **foundation** or access courses to prepare students for their studies.

British universities offer a **personalised** but independent approach.

The **emphasis** is on creative and independent thought, which helps develop the skills you will need to compete in the **global job market**. Tutors not only teach but also provide support and **guidance**. As a result, international students have a very low **drop out** rate and a very high **pass rate**.

It is very simple to become an international student in the UK. The British Council offers a free and **impartial** service to anyone who is interested in studying in the UK, and an organisation called UCAS assists you in finding a course and making an effective application.

The UK is a **dynamic** and **cosmopolitan** place. The countryside is beautiful, and the theatres, museums, architecture and rich history make it a **fascinating** place to live and study. Why not give it a go?

VOCABULARY

magnet

a thing that attracts (literally, a piece of metal that attracts or repels iron)

overseas

coming from abroad, foreign

guaranteed

promised and assured

assessed

evaluated, ranked

recognition

accepting that something (e.g. a course) is of high quality

cost-effective

here, provides good education for not too much money

degree

here, providing further education

scholarships

payments from a sponsor's funds to maintain a good student in full-time education

IELTS

short for International English Language Testing System. It measures ability to communicate in English across all four language skills: listening, reading, writing and speaking

foundation

here, basic, preparatory

personalised

focused on individual students

emphasis

special importance

global job market

jobs that are open to people all over the world

guidance

help and direction

drop out

when you have to stop your university studies before you have completed your course

pass rate

marks that you need to get in order to begin/continue to study at a university

impartial

fair, unbiased

dynamic

where a lot happens and changes happen quite often

cosmopolitan

including people of many different backgrounds

fascinating

very interesting, irresistibly attractive

Forrás:

http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/newsenglish/britain/070813_uk_universities.shtml

Writing Unit 2 Education

Write your opinion in 150–180 words about the following topic:

„How many languages do pupils have to study in a grammar school?” and „ Are you a god language learner?”

Unit 2 Speaking – Education

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



Try to comment on the following quotation: A Singaporean minister once said this, “Singaporean students are good at solving known problems, problems that already have a solution.”

PROMPTS:

- education models
- education system
- language family

- to specialize in
- efficient
- to opt
- to acquire
- lack of
- teaching aid
- atmosphere
- to solve problems
- well-defined problem

(<https://medium.com/age-of-awareness/singapores-education-system-a-local-perspective-af7fce23789c>)

Education Words

to behave	viselkedni
behaviour	magatartás
to accept	elfogad
rule	szabály
crime	bűn, bűncselekmény
drug	drog
contract	szerződés
excuse	mentség, kifogás
to discuss	megvitat
headmaster, headmistress, principal	igazgató
primary school	általános iskola
secondary school	középiskola
grammar school	gimnázium
college	főiskola
university	egyetem
to apply for admission to ...	felvételizik vh-va
to leave school	elvégez iskolát
leaving exam	érettségi
tuition fee	tandíj
to go on to higher education	felsőoktatási intézménybe megy tanulni
standard of education	az oktatás színvonla
requirement	követelmény
to fulfil the requirements	teljesíti a követelményeket
boring lessons	unalmas órák
to be good/bad at something	jó/rossz vm-ben
to be specialised in	vm-re specializálódik
to do well at school	jól tanul
to get good/bad grades	jó/rossz jegyeket kap
to lag behind	hátul kullog
to misbehave	rosszul viselkedik
to be expelled from school	kizárni az iskolából
cheeky	szemtelen

to talk back
to take pleasure in
to swot
eager beaver
to learn sth by heart
hard-working
effort
discipline
just
impartial
to favour
to impart knowledge
to pass an exam
to fail an exam
formidable
to indicate
survey
client
to reveal
expenditure
to contemplate
to put off
annual
soaring
scholarship
overseas
degree
drop out
foundation
pass rate
fascinating
impartial
emphasis

visszabeszél
örömet leli valamiben
magol
stréber
kívülről megtanul vm-t
szorgalmas
szorgalom
fegyelem
igazságos
elfogulatlan
kivételezik v. kivel
átadja a tudását
levizsgál
megtörik
félelmetes, hatalmas, rettentő
jelez, jelent, mutat
felmérés
kliens
feltár
kiadás
megfontol
elhalaszt
éves
emelkedés
ösztöndíj
tengerentúlról jött, külföldi
diploma
iskolából kimaradt diák
alap
ponthatár (amivel átmegy valaki a vizsgán)
érdekes
elfogulatlan, igazságos
hangsúly

How to talk about illness

Sometimes you don't feel very well, but you're not really ill. Here are some common expressions that you can use to describe general „aches and pains” and some useful „sympathetic” responses.

GENERAL ACHES AND PAINS

„I feel a bit under the weather.”

„I'm not feeling very well.” / „I don't feel very well.”

„I'm not feeling a hundred percent.”

„I think I'm going down with a cold. I've got a sore throat.”
(Other cold symptoms are a runny nose, or feeling a bit „achy”.)

„I've got a slight headache.”
Remember: pronounced „ake” as in „cake”.

Other parts of your body which you can combine with „ache”: toothache, stomach ache and backache. For all other parts of your body, say „I've got a pain in...”

„I'm not sleeping very well at the moment.”

„I feel a little faint.”

„I feel a bit dizzy.” (when your head is spinning) „I've got a nagging pain in my shoulder.” (nagging = a pain that won't go away)
„I've got a splitting headache – I hope it's not a migraine.”

Note

You can use the verb „feel” in both the present simple and the present continuous to talk about your current health. The present continuous suggests a more temporary feeling, but there’s not much difference between the two forms in meaning.

„I don’t feel very well” = „I’m not feeling very well.”

SYMPATHETIC RESPONSES

„I’m sorry to hear that.”

„Actually, you don’t look very well.”

„You look a little pale.”

„Maybe you’re going down with something.

There’s a bug going around.”

„Maybe you should go home and get some rest.”

„Why don’t you go home and have a lie-down.”

„Is there anything I can do?”

„Shall I get you an aspirin?”

MILD ILLNESS

„I have a bit of a stomach bug.”

„I think I’ve got a bit of a temperature.”

„I have a touch of (the) flu.” (Flu = influenza) „I’ve got a nasty cough.” (pronounced „coff”)

Note

With most mild illnesses, we use „a” as an article: a cold, a cough, a stomach bug.
However, we say „flu” or „the flu”: „He’s got flu” / „He’s got the flu”.

With serious illnesses, we generally don’t use an article at all.
„She’s got cancer”, „He picked up Hepatitis”, „Thousands of people used to die from cholera / typhoid”.

Reported Speech in English

Sometimes you need to tell people about your conversations and change **direct** speech into **indirect** speech. When you do this, you need to make sure that the tenses are correct.

For example, Karen says to Peter: „My job **is** very interesting.” Peter then wants to report this conversation to Sarah a week later. He says: „Karen said that her job **was** interesting.”

When you report a conversation, the tense changes:

„My job **is** very interesting” becomes: She said that her job **was** very interesting.

TENSE CHANGES

„**I'm going** swimming” – She said **she was going** swimming.

„**I haven't seen** the film” – She said she **hadn't seen** the film.

„**I have been working** all morning” – She said she **had been working** all morning.

„**I was working** all week” – She said she **had been working** all week.

„He **went** on holiday to Greece” – She said he **had gone** on holiday to Greece.

Sentences that are already in the „had done” form remain the same:

„**I hadn't seen** him before” – She said she **hadn't seen** him before.

REPORTING MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs also go back one tense.

Will becomes **would**.

For example: „**I will** see him later” – She said she **would** see him later.

Can becomes **could**.

For example: „**I can** swim” – She said she **could** swim.

May becomes **might**.

For example: „**It may** become colder over night” – He said it **might** become colder over night.

Direct speech using would, could, might and should all stay the same in reported speech.

„**You should** speak more” – He said I **should** speak more.

REPORTING QUESTIONS

When you report questions, the word order changes to look like a normal statement.

For example: „**Can you help me?**” – She asked me if I could help her.

„**What’s the time?**” – He asked her what the time was.

OTHER CHANGES

Time expressions also change in reported speech.

today – that day

tomorrow – the day after / the next day

yesterday – the day before / the previous day

now – then

next week – the week after

last week – the week before / the previous week

Other expressions that change:

here – there

this – that

Read vocabulary

ILLNESSES	BETEGSÉGEK
splitting headache	hasogató fejfájás
to sneeze	tüsszög
to cough (pronunciation!)	köhög
to shiver with cold	didereg, fázik
epidemic	járvány
to feel dizzy	szédül
to faint	elájul
inflamed	gyulladt
swollen	duzzadt
toothache	fogfájás
hay fever	szénanátha
food poisoning	ételmérgezés
indigestion	gyomorrontás
nervous breakdown	idegösszeroppanás
fatigue	fáradtság
small-pox	himlő
heart disease	szívbetegség
cancer	rák
fatal disease	halálos betegség
mumps	mumpsz
rash/spot	kiütés

rash/spot	kiütés
chicken pox	bárányhimlő
to vomit	hányni
to bruise one's skin	felhorzsolja a bőrét
serious wound	súlyos sérülés, seb
to sprain one's ankle	kificamítja a bokáját
washed out/ run down	kimerült
to feel seedy	gyengén van
off colour	sápadt
insomnia	álmatlanság
hollow tooth	lyukas fog
TREATMENT	KEZELÉS
prevention	megelőzés
to cure	gyógyítani
G.P.	körzeti orvos
to strip to the waist	derékig levetkőzik
to feel one's pulse	megméri a pulzusát
blood test	vérvizsgálat
to prescribe a treatment	kezelést ír elő
to make out a prescription for	receptet felír vm-re
to put sy on the sick-list	betegállományba vesz
medical certificate	orvosi igazolás
to recover	felgyógyul

to drill	fúr
to stop/fill one's tooth	betömi a fogát
to extract	kihúz
to combat sg	leküzd valamit
to be operated on for sg.	megoperál
in plaster	begipszelve

Past Continuous – Folyamatos múlt idő

Formája: was/were + ige ING-es alakja

Példák:

- You were studying when she called. (Épp tanultál amikor ő hívott.)
- Were you studying when she called?
- You were not studying when she called.

A folyamatos múlt időt akkor használjuk, ha azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy egy hosszan tartó cselekvést egy másik (rövidebb), félbeszakít. A rövidebb cselekvést ilyenkor egyszerű múlt idővel fejezzük ki. Úgy szoktam ezt érzékeltetni, hogy a magyar igekötős igék pl. belépett, felnevetett, becsengetett stb. kerülnek egyszerű múlt időbe.

Példák:

- I was watching TV when she called.
- When the phone rang, she was writing a letter.
- While we were having the picnic, it started to rain.
- What were you doing when the earthquake started?
- I was listening to my iPod, so I didn't hear the fire alarm.
- While John was sleeping last night, someone stole his car.
- While I was writing the email, the computer suddenly went off.

- A: What were you doing when you broke your leg?
B: I was snowboarding.

Ha a múlt egy adott időpontjában éppen csináltam valamit, akkor is a folyamatos múlt időt használom.

Példák:

- Last night at 6 PM, I was eating dinner.
- At midnight, we were still driving through the desert.
- Yesterday at this time, I was sitting at my desk at work.

Fontos!

Az alábbi mondatokban az egyszerű múlt idő és a folyamatos múlt idő használatának jelentésbeli különbségeit érzékelheted.

Példák:

- Last night at 6 PM, I ate dinner.
(I started eating at 6 PM. Vagyis, 6-kor kezdtem el enni.)
- Last night at 6 PM, I was eating dinner.
(I started earlier; and at 6 PM, I was in the process of eating dinner. Értsd: már korábban elkezdtem, szóval 6-kor már bőven ettem.)

Amikor két cselekvés egyidejűleg, párhuzamosan zajlik. Általában egy mondatban szerepel a két dolog. A „while”-t itt előszeretettel alkalmazzuk.

Példák:

- I was studying while he was making dinner. Amíg én tanultam, ő vacsorát készített.
- While Ellen was reading, Tim was watching television.
- Were you listening while he was talking?
- I wasn't paying attention while I was writing the letter, so I made several mistakes.
- What were you doing while you were waiting?
- Thomas wasn't working, and I wasn't working either
- They were eating dinner, discussing their plans, and having a good time.

Hangulati hatáskeltésként gyakran használjuk a folyamatos múlt időt. Figyeld meg:

Példák:

- When I walked into the office, several people were busily typing, some were talking on the phones, the boss was yelling directions, and customers were waiting to be helped. One customer was yelling at a secretary and waving his hands. Others were complaining to each other about the bad service.
- Amikor beléptem az irodába, jónéhány ember szorgosan gépelt, néhányan telefonon beszéltek, a főnök ordítva parancsolgatott, és vevők várták, hogy valaki kiszolgálja őket. Egy vevő a titkárnővel ordított, kezeivel hadonászva. Mások a rossz kiszolgálásra panaszkodtak.

Ez most ismerős lesz: ha a folyamatos múltat összevegyítjük egy kis “always” vagy “constantly” szavakkal akkor azt fejezhetjük ki, hogy valami nagyon irritált vagy sokkolt minket hajdanán.

Példák:

- She was always coming to class late
- He was constantly talking. He annoyed (idegesített) everyone.
- I didn't like them because they were always complaining (panaszkodtak).

Hát, ennyi. Jöhetnek a feladatok.

Past Continuous

FORM

[was/were + present participle]

Examples:

- You **were studying** when she called.
- **Were you studying** when she called?
- You **were not studying** when she called.

USE 1 INTERRUPTED ACTION IN THE PAST



Use the Past Continuous to indicate that a longer action in the past was interrupted. The interruption is usually a shorter action in the Simple Past. Remember this can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time.

Examples:

I **was watching** TV when she called.

When the phone rang, she **was writing** a letter.

While we **were having** the picnic, it started to rain.

What **were you doing** when the earthquake started?

I **was listening** to my iPod, so I didn't hear the fire alarm.

You **were not listening** to me when I told you to turn the oven off.

While John **was sleeping** last night, someone stole his car.

Sammy **was waiting** for us when we got off the plane.

While **I was writing** the email, the computer suddenly went off.

A: What **were you doing** when you broke your leg?

B: **I was snowboarding.**

USE 2 SPECIFIC TIME AS AN INTERRUPTION



In USE 1, described above, the Past Continuous is interrupted by a shorter action in the Simple Past. However, you can also use a specific time as an interruption.

Examples:

- Last night at 6 PM, I **was eating** dinner.
- At midnight, we **were still driving** through the desert.
- Yesterday at this time, I **was sitting** at my desk at work.

IMPORTANT

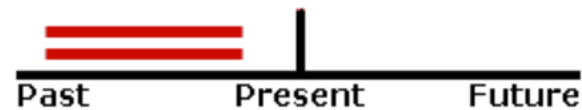
In the Simple Past, a specific time is used to show when an action began or finished. In the Past Continuous, a specific time only interrupts the action.

Examples:

- Last night at 6 PM, I **ate** dinner.
/ **STARTED EATING AT 6 PM.**

- Last night at 6 PM, I **was eating** dinner.
/ STARTED EARLIER; AND AT 6 PM, I WAS IN THE PROCESS OF EATING DINNER.

USE 3 PARALLEL ACTIONS



When you use the Past Continuous with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions were happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.

Examples:

I **was studying** while he **was making** dinner.

While Ellen **was reading**, Tim **was watching** television.

Were you listening while he **was talking**?

I **wasn't paying** attention while I **was writing** the letter, so I made several mistakes.

What **were you doing** while you **were waiting**?

Thomas **wasn't working**, and I **wasn't working** either.

They **were eating** dinner, **discussing** their plans, and **having** a good time.

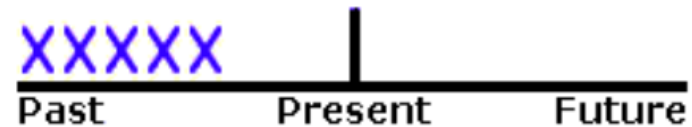
USE 4 ATMOSPHERE

In English, we often use a series of parallel actions to describe the atmosphere at a particular time in the past.

Examples:

– When I walked into the office, several people were busily typing, some were talking on the phones, the boss was yelling directions, and customers were waiting to be helped. One customer was yelling at a secretary and waving his hands. Others were complaining to each other about the bad service.

USE 5 REPETITION AND IRRITATION WITH „ALWAYS”



The Past Continuous with words such as „always” or „constantly” expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happened in the past. The concept is very similar to the expression „used to” but with negative emotion. Remember to put the words „always” or „constantly” between „be” and „verb+ing.”

Examples:

- She was always coming to class late
- He was constantly talking. He annoyed everyone
- I didn't like them because they were always complaining.

WHILE VS. WHEN

Clauses are groups of words which have meaning, but are often not complete sentences. Some clauses begin with the word „when” such as „when she called” or „when it bit me.” Other clauses begin with „while” such as „while she was sleeping” and „while he was surfing.” When you talk about things in the past, „when” is most often followed by the verb tense Simple Past, whereas „while” is usually followed by Past Continuous. „While” expresses the idea of „during that time.” Study the examples below. They have similar meanings, but they emphasize different parts of the sentence.

Examples:

- I was studying when she called
- While I was studying, she called

REMEMBER NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS / MIXED VERBS

It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Past Continuous with these verbs, you must use Simple Past.

Examples:

- Jane was being at my house when you arrived. Not Correct
- Jane was at my house when you arrived. Correct

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You were just studying when she called.
- Were you just studying when she called?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- The salesman was helping the customer when the thief came into the store. ACTIVE
- The customer was being helped by the salesman when the thief came into the store. PASSIVE

Irregular verbs

	Infinitive	Simple Past	Past Participle	Magyar jelentés
arise	arose	arisen	felkel, keletkezik, felmerül	
awake	awoke	awoken	felébred	
be	was/were	been	lenni	
bear	bore	borne/born	elvisel/születik	
beat	beat	beaten	üt, legyőz, megver	
become	became	become	válik vmivé	
begin	began	begun	elkezd, elkezdődik	
bend	bent	bent	hajlik	
bet	bet	bet	fogad	
bid	bid	bid	ajánlatot tesz, ígér	
bind	bound	bound	köt, beköt, összeköt	
bite	bite	bitten	harap, megcsíp (szúnyog)	
bleed	bled	bled	vérzik	
blow	blew	blown	fúj (szél), kifúj (orrot)	

break	broke	broken	eltör, eltörrik
breed	bred	bred	tenyészt, szül
bring	brought	brought	hoz
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	sugároz, közvetít
build	built	built	épít
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	ég, éget
burst	burst	burst	felrobban; vmilyen érzés hirtelen kitör valaki
buy	bought	bought	megvesz
can	could	could	képes (módbeli segédige)
cast	cast	cast	dob, hajít
catch	caught	caught	elkap, elfog

choose chose chosen választ, kiválaszt

cling (to) clung clung ragaszkodik

come came come jön

cost cost cost kerül vmibe

creep crept crept mászik, kúszik

cut cut cut vág

deal (with) dealt dealt foglalkozik vmivel

dig dug dug ás

do did done csinál

draw drew drawn rajzol, húz

dream dreamt/dreamed dreamt/dreamed álmodik

drink drank/drunk drunk iszik

drive drove driven vezet

eat ate eaten eszik

fali	feli	fallen	esik
feed	fed	fed	etet
feel	felt	felt	érez
fight	fought	fought	harcol
find	found	found	talál
flee	fled	fled	menekül
fly	flew	flown	repül
forbid	forbade	forbidden	megtilt
forget	forgót	forgotten	elfelejt
forgive	forgave	forgiven	megbocsát
freeze	froze	frozen	megfagy, befagyaszt

get	got	got/gotten	kap, megszerez
give	gave	given	ad
go	went	gone	megy
grind	ground	ground	őröl, darál
grow	grew	grown	nő, termel
hang	hung/hanged	hung/hanged	akaszt, lóg, felakaszt
have	had	had	birtokol
hear	heard	heard	hall
hide	hid	hidden	elrejt, elbújik
hit	hit	hit	üt
hold	held	held	tart, megfog
hurt	hurt	hurt	megsért
keep	kept	kept	tart
kneel	knelt/kneeled	knelt/kneeled	letérdel
know	knew	known	tud

lay	laid	laid	lefektet, terít
lead	led	led	vezet
lean	leant/leaned	leant/leaned	támaszkodik vminek
leap	leapt/leaped	leapt/leaped	szökken, ugrik
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	megtanul, megtud
leave	left	left	elhagy, elmegy
lend	lent	lent	kölcsönad
let	let	let	hagy, enged
lie	lay	lain	fekszik
light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted	meggyújt

lose	lost	lost	elveszít
make	made	made	készít
mean	meant	meant	jelent vmit, ért vmit vhogyan, szándékozik
meet	met	met	találkozik
pay	paid	paid	fizet
put	put	put	tesz, rak
quit	quit	quit	otthagyl, elmegy
read	read	read	olvas
ride	rode	ridden	lovagol
ring	rang	rung	csöng
rise	rose	risen	emelkedik, kel (nap)
run	ran	run	fut
saw	sawed	sawn	fűrészcel
say	said	said	mond
see	saw	seen	lát

seek sought sought keres, kutat

sell sold sold elad

send sent sent elküld

set set set beállít, helyez

sew sewed sewn varr

shake shook shaken ráz

shed shed shed elhullat

shine shone shone süt, ragyog

shoot shot shot lő

show showed shown mutat, prezentál

shrink	shrank/shrunk	shrunk/shrunken	összemegy, (össze)zsugorodik
shut	shut	shut	bezár
sing	sang	sung	énekel
sink	sank	sunk	elsüllyed
sit	sat	sat	leül
sleep	slept	slept	alszik
slide	síid	síid	megcsúszik
smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled	szagol, érez
speak		spoke	spoken beszél
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled	betűz
spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled	kiont
spend	spent	spent	költ (pénzt), tölt (időt)
spit	spat	spat	köp
split	split	split	feloszt, megoszt
spread		spread	terjeszt, terjed

spring	sprang	sprung	ugrik, szökken
spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled	elront, elkényeztet
stand	stood	stood	áll
steal	stole	stolen	lop
stick	stuck	stuck	ragaszt
sting	stung	stung	szúr, csíp
stink	stank	stunk	bűzlik
stride	strode	stridden	menetel, lépked
strike	struck	struck	támad, üt
strive	strove	striven	igyekszik
swear	swore	sworn	megecsüszik

sweep swept swept söpör

swell swelled swollen megdagad

swim swam swum úszik

take took taken visz, rak, tesz

teach taught taught tanít

tear tore torn elszakít

tell told told megmond, elmesél

think thought thought gondol

throw threw thrown dob

tread trod trod/trodden tapos

understand understood understood megért

undertake undertook undertaken vállal, belefog vmibe

wake woke woken ébred, ébreszt

wear wore worn visel

weave wove/weaved woven/weaved szó

weep wept wept sír

wet wet wet benedvesít

win won won győz, nyer

wind wound wound csavar, felhúz

wring wrung wrung kicsavar

write wrote written ír

UNIT 3.

Unit 3. Speaking: Employment

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



When searching for a job, a number of different options exist. Networking, job boards, classifieds, and school placements are all viable options. Try to think of these and collect your thoughts in connection with finding a suitable job nowadays.

Prompts:

- multinational company
- self-employed
- to be on the dole

- to be between jobs
- job centre
- varied
- Labour Exchange
- vacancy
- profile
- secure job
- to put one's heart and soul into one's profession
- to make enquiries
- job ad
- careers office
- employment agency
- starting salary
- prospects of advancement
- to be on prohibition

(Resource: www.resolve recruit.com/how-employment-agencies-find-you-jobs/)

Conditionals hungarian explanation TEXT

Ha szép idő lesz, kirándulni fogunk. A második szint a magyar -na,-ne,-ná,-nés mondatoknak felel meg pl. Ha szép idő lenne, kirándulnánk. A harmadik szint pedig mindez a múltban: Ha szép idő lett volna, kirándultunk volna. Szóval ha ilyen típusú feltételes mondatokat szeretnénk létrehozni, csak azt kell megjegyeznünk, milyen szerkezet társul ezekhez. Ja, az is fontos, hogy a különféle tagmondatokat értelemszerűen keverhetjük is: Ha nem ittál volna annyit (3. szint), most nem lennél rosszul (második szint). Nézzük most mindezt részletesen.

I. A FELTÉTELES MÓD ELSŐ ALAPESETE

A feltételes mód első alapesete a következő két tagmondatból áll össze:

1. if + egyszerű jelen idő és
2. will / won't + infinitive (to nélküli főnévi igenév).

Az összetett mondaton belül a két tagmondat sorrendje tetszőleges. Csupán egy helyesírási különbségre kell ügyelni. Ha az if-es tagmondat az első, akkor vesszőt teszünk utána, de fordított esetben nincs írásjel az if előtt.

A feltételes módnak ez a változata a jövőre vonatkozik. Azt fejezi ki, hogy milyen feltételnek kell ahhoz teljesülnie, hogy valamilyen esemény bekövetkezzen. Az if kezdetű mellékmondat közli a feltételt, a főmondat tartalmazza a várható következményt.

Példák:

If I make a promise, I will keep it. Ha megígértem, be is tartom.

If anyone corrects your pronunciation, you have to thank him for it. Ha bárki kijavítja a kiejtésedet, meg kell köszönnöd neki azt.

I'll come here tomorrow unless it rains. El fogok jönni holnap, hacsak nem esik az eső.

If I am ill, my mum calls a doctor. Ha beteg vagyok, anya orvost hív.

I'll buy this dress if I have more money. Megveszem ezt a ruhát, ha több pénzem lesz.

Figyelem!

Ügyeljünk arra, hogy az if kezdetű mellékmondatban nehogyan jövő idejű igealakot szerepeltessünk (tehát 'if' után nem lehet 'will') !

A FELTÉTELES MÓD MÁSODIK ALAPESETE

A feltételes mód második alapesete a következő két tagmondatból tevődik össze:

1. a főmondat feltételes jelen időben (present conditional) = should/would + ige 1. alakja,
2. a mellékmondat (az if-es tagmondat) múlt időben (simple past) van.

Példák:

If I were a rich man, I wouldn't work. Ha gazdag lennék, nem dolgoznék.

If he could not come, who would do the work. Ha nem tudna jönni, ki végezné el a munkát.

I would buy this dress if I had more money. Megvenném ezt az autót, ha több pénzem lenne.

If I could sing, I'd be happy. Boldog lennék, ha tudnék énekelni.

Megjegyzés1: a mellékmondat múlt idejű létigéje egyes szám első személyben, bizonyos megszilárdult kifejezésekben was helyett were.

A FELTÉTELES MÓD HARMADIK ALAPESETE

Ez a feltételes múlt: a feltétel is, és a következmény is lehetetlen (... volna, ... volna).

1. a főmondat feltételes múlt időben (past conditional) van= should/would + have + ige 3. alakja,
2. a mellékmondat (az if-es tagmondat) régmúltban (past perfect) van= had + ige
3. alakja.

Példák:

If he had been ill, he would have called the doctor. Ha beteg lett volna, orvost hívott volna.

If you had been able to tell the truth, you wouldn't have lost my trust. Ha képes lettél volna elmondani az igazat, nem vesztetted volna el a bizalmamat.

I would have bought this car if I had had more money. Megvettem volna ezt az autót, ha több pénzem lett volna.

If I had been there, you would have been the happiest. Ha ott lettem volna, te lettél volna a legboldogabb.

Ha eddig eljutottál, jutalmad egy bárgyú, angolokról szóló vicc:

Hogy nevetnek az angolok?

IF, IF, IF ...

RULES FOR WRITING FORMAL LETTERS IN ENGLISH

In English there are a number of conventions that should be used when writing a formal or business letter. Furthermore, you try to write as simply and as clearly as possible, and not to make the letter longer than necessary. Remember not to use informal language like contractions.

Addresses:

1) **Your Address**

The return address should be written in the top right-hand corner of the letter.

2) **The Address of the person you are writing to**

The inside address should be written on the left, starting below your address.

Date:

Different people put the date on different sides of the page. You can write this on the right or the left on the line after the address you are writing to. Write the month as a word.

SALUTATION OR GREETING:

1) **Dear Sir or Madam,**

If you do not know the name of the person you are writing to, use this. It is always advisable to try to find out a name.

2) **Dear Mr Jenkins,**

If you know the name, use the title (Mr, Mrs, Miss or Ms, Dr, etc.) and the surname only. If you are writing to a woman and do not know if she uses Mrs or Miss, you can use Ms, which is for married and single women.

ENDING A LETTER:

1) **Yours faithfully**

If you do not know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

2) **Yours sincerely**

If you know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

3) **Your signature**

Sign your name, then print it underneath the signature. If you think the person you are writing to might not know whether you are male or female, put your title in brackets after your name.

Content of a Formal Letter

FIRST PARAGRAPH

The first paragraph should be short and state the purpose of the letter– to make an enquiry, complain, request something, etc.

The paragraph or paragraphs in the middle of the letter should contain the relevant information behind the writing of the letter. Most letters in English are not very long, so keep the information to the essentials and concentrate on organising it in a clear and logical manner rather than expanding too much.

LAST PARAGRAPH

The last paragraph of a formal letter should state what action you expect the recipient to take–to refund, send you information, etc.

Abbreviations Used in Letter Writing

The following abbreviations are widely used in letters:

- **asap** = as soon as possible
- **cc** = carbon copy (when you send a copy of a letter to more than one person, you use this abbreviation to let them know)
- **enc.** = enclosure (when you include other papers with your letter)
- **pp** = per procuracionem (A Latin phrase meaning that you are signing the letter on somebody else's behalf; if they are not there to sign it themselves, etc)
- **ps** = postscript (when you want to add something after you've finished and signed it)
- **pto (informal)** = please turn over (to make sure that the other person knows the letter continues on the other side of the page)
- **RSVP** = please reply

Outline: A Covering Letter

A covering letter is the one that accompanies your CV when you are applying for a job. Here is a fairly conventional plan for the layout of the paragraphs.

Opening Paragraph

Briefly identify yourself and the position you are applying for. Add how you found out about the vacancy.

Paragraph 2

Give the reasons why you are interested in working for the company and why you wish to be considered for that particular post. State your relevant qualifications and experience, as well as your personal qualities that make you a suitable candidate.

Paragraph 3

Inform them that you have enclosed your current CV and add any further information that you think could help your case.

Closing Paragraph

Give your availability for interview, thank them for their consideration, restate your interest and close the letter.

Outline: A Letter of Enquiry

A letter of enquiry is when you are approaching a company speculatively, that is you are making an approach without their having advertised or announced a vacancy.

Opening Paragraph

Introduce yourself briefly and give your reason for writing. Let them know of the kind of position you are seeking, why you are interested and how you heard about them.

Paragraph 2

Show why their company in particular interests you, mention your qualifications and experience along with any further details that might make them interested in seeing you.

Paragraph 3

Refer to your enclosed CV and draw their attention to any particularly important points you would like them to focus on in it.

Closing Paragraph

Thank them, explain your availability for interview and restate your enthusiasm for their company and desire to be considered for posts that might as yet be unavailable.

Present Perfect Continuous

FORM

[has/have + been + present participle]

Examples:

- You **have been waiting** here for two hours.
- **Have you been waiting** here for two hours?
- You **have not been waiting** here for two hours

Complete List of Present Perfect Continuous Forms

USE 1 DURATION FROM THE PAST UNTIL NOW



We use the Present Perfect Continuous to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now. “For five minutes,” “for two weeks,” and “since Tuesday” are all durations which can be used with the Present Perfect Continuous.

Examples:

They **have been talking** for the last hour

She **has been working** at that company for three years.

What **have you been doing** for the last 30 minutes?

James **has been teaching** at the university since June.

We **have been waiting** here for over two hours!

Why **has Nancy not been taking** her medicine for the last three days?

USE 2 RECENTLY, LATELY



You can also use the Present Perfect Continuous WITHOUT a duration such as “for two weeks.” Without the duration, the tense has a more general meaning of “lately.” We often use the words “lately” or “recently” to emphasize this meaning.

Examples:

Recently, I **have been feeling** really tired.

She **has been watching** too much television lately.

Have you been exercising lately?

Mary **has been feeling** a little depressed.

Lisa **has not been practicing** her English

What **have you been doing**?

IMPORTANT

Remember that the Present Perfect Continuous has the meaning of “lately” or “recently.” If you use the Present Perfect Continuous in a question such as “Have you been feeling alright?”, it can suggest that the person looks sick or unhealthy. A question such as “Have you been smoking?” can suggest that you smell the smoke on the person. Using this tense in a question suggests you can see, smell, hear or feel the results of the action. It is possible to insult someone by using this tense incorrectly.

REMEMBER Non-Continuous Verbs/ Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that **Non-Continuous Verbs** cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for **Mixed Verbs** cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Present Perfect Continuous with these verbs, you must use **Present Perfect**.

Examples:

- Sam **has been having** his car for two years. **Not Correct**
- Sam **has had** his car for two years. **Correct**

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You have **only** been waiting here for one hour.
- Have you **only** been waiting here for one hour?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- Recently, John **has been doing** the work. *ACTIVE*
- Recently, the work **has been being done** by John. *PASSIVE*

NOTE: Present Perfect Continuous is less commonly used in its passive form.

Writing Unit 3 Employment

Write a short essay in connection with what you consider the most important things about a job. Your essay should be approximately 150–180 words.

„What do you consider the most important things about a job?”

Use some cues:

- varied
- readily
- spacious
- promotion
- challenging
- rewarding
- to make a success of

Weather words

temperature	hőmérséklet
degree	fok
bright	ragyogó
clear	tiszta
sunny	napos
mild	enyhe
lovely	szép
changeable	változékony
unsteady	változékony
unpleasant	kellemetlen
nasty	kellemetlen, rossz
awful	szörnyű
wretched	vacak
rainy	esős
windy	szeles
foggy	ködös
cloudy	felhős
misty	ködös
humid	nyirkos, párás
damp	nedves, nyirkos
brisk	friss
It's drizzling.	Szemerkél.
It's thundering and lightning.	Dörög és villámlik.
It's only a shower.	Csak egy zápor.
heavy rainstorm	nagy vihar esővel
to melt	elolvad
to awaken	felébred
leaf (Tsz. leaves)	levél (levelek)
to bloom	virágzik
to become yellow	megsárgul
to fall, fell, fallen	leesik
to harvest	betakarít
It is frosty.	Fagy.

slippery	csúszós
to be half frozen	félíg meg van fagyva
to freeze, froze, frozen	megfagy
wet	nedves
to complain about	panaszodik vm-re
nippy weather	csípős idő
strange	furcsa különös
flood	áradás
blizzard	hóvihar
drought (Pronunciation!)	szárazság (kiejtést ellenőrizni!)
hailstone	jégeső
blustery wind	szélvihar

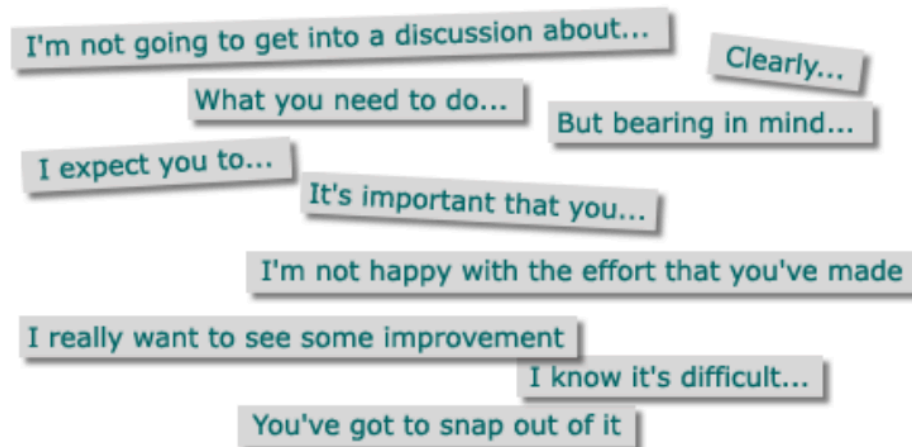
Negotiations: tricky conversations

INTRODUCTION

Ali managers sometimes have to have difficult conversations with people working under them. What is the best way to give negative feedback?

Think

Imagine you are unhappy with the behaviour of a member of your team. You have decided to raise the issue with this person and tell him or her that you would like to see an improvement. What words or phrases might be useful in this tricky conversation?



Listen

Now listen to a tricky conversation at work between a manager and an employee. Michelle has come to Sean complaining that she did not get a job recently. How does Sean react? As you listen, try to hear the phrases above.

Check understanding

Check your understanding by reading the script below:

Sean: Okay, well, **I'm not going to get into a discussion about** who deserved to get the job. Clearly, the person who was appointed was the right person for the job. **What you need to do** is look at your work and what you're doing and where that's taking you in your career. **But bearing in mind** that you are still employed to do a job and I **expect you** to do that job with a certain attitude. You're meeting members of the public quite re Employment

Employment Words

qualification	képzettség, végzettség
occupation	foglalkozás
profession	hivatás
to work/ make a living as a ...	m-ként keresi a kenyerét
post	poszt
career	karrier
white/blue collar worker	fizikai/ szellemi munkás
brainwork	szellemi munka
employee, employer	alkalmazott, munkáltató
department	osztály
manuál work	kézzel végzett, fizikai munka
menial work	unalmas, fárasztó munka
skilled or unskilled worker	szakképzett, szakképzetlen
to be self- employed	magánvállalkozó
to be a freelance	szabadúszó
entrepreneur	vállalkozó
to run sy's own business	saját vállalkozását vezeti
capital funds	alaptőke
to set up a business enterprise	vállalkozásba kezd
private/public sector	magán/közfőera
to pay tax	adót fizet
earning	kereset
hourly rate/wages	órabér
prémium payment	pótlék
net salary	nettó kereset
gross salary	bruttó kereset
deduction	levonás
income tax	jövedelemadó
annual income	éves jövedelem
superannuation contribution	nyugdíjjárulék
wage-earners and salary-earners	bérből és fizetésből élők
commencing/starting salary	kezdőfizetés
subsidy	állami támogatás
bank account	bankszámla
poverty line	létminimum

to purchase	vásárol
reserve	tartalék
unemployed	munkanélküli
unemployment benefit	munkanélküli segély
to join the dole queue	sorban áll segélyért, csatlakozik a segélyen lévőkhez
branch	ágazat
craft union	szakmai szakszervezet
better terms of employment	jobb munkafeltételek
welfare service	szociális juttatás
subsidized meal	kedvezményes étkezés
lunch voucher	ebédjegy
reasonable salary	elfogadható kereset

annual holiday with pay	évi fizetett szabadság
retirement age	nyugdíj korhatár
to give up/ quit a job	felmond
to be made redundant/to sack/fire/dismiss	kirúg, elbocsát
a full-time job/ a part time job	főállás/ részmunkaidős munka
day silift	műszak
to be dismissed	elbocsát
to be appointed	kinevez
promotion	előléptetés
to retrain	átképez
to apply for a job	munkára jelentkezik
to be underpaid	alulfizetett
fringe benefits	juttatások
flexible working hours	rugalmas munkaidő
to do overtime	túlórázik
job centre	munkaügyi központ
design engineer	tervező mérnök
scientist	tudós
researcher	kutató
psychiatrist	pszichiáter
solicitor/barrister	ügyvéd
judge	bíró
physician	orvos
vet	állatorvos
interpreter	tolmács
civil servant	köztisztviselő
chartered accountant	mérlegképes könyvelő
caretaker	gondnok
estate agent	ingatlanközvetítő
social worker	szociális gondozó
markét researcher	piackutató
turner	esztergályos
carpenter	asztalos, ács
joiner	asztalos
guard	őr
interior decorator	belsőépítész

to purchase	vásárol
reserve	tartalék
unemployed	munkanélküli
unemployment benefit	munkanélküli segély
to join the dole queue	sorban áll segélyért, csatlakozik a segélyen lévőkhez
branch	ágazat
craft union	szakmai szakszervezet
better terms of employment	jobb munkafeltételek
welfare service	szociális juttatás
subsidized meal	kedvezményes étkezés
lunch voucher	ebédijegy
reasonable salary	elfogadható kereset

to be accused of	vádolni vm-vel
to subsidize	támogat, finanszíroz
punishment	büntetés

BBC Learning English Talking Business

Tricky conversations

USEFUL PHRASES

I'm not going to get into a discussion about... Clearly...

What you need to do...

But bearing in mind...

I expect you to...

It's important that you...

I'm not happy with the effort that you've made

I really want to see some improvement

You've got to snap out of it

I know it's difficult...

TRANSCRIPT

Sean:

Okay, well, **I'm not going to get into a discussion about** who deserved to get the job. **Clearly**, the person who was appointed was the right person for the job. **What you need to do** is look at your work and what you're doing and where that's taking you in your career. **But bearing in mind** that you are still employed to do a job and I **expect you to** do that job with a certain attitude. You're meeting members of the public quite regularly – **it's important that you** aren't unhappy, or at least that you don't show it. This meeting is really just to let you know **I'm not happy with the effort that you've made...**

Michelle:

Okay ...

Sean:

... and **I really want to see some improvement. I know it's difficult.** I know that it's depressing not to get a job, but **you've got to snap out of it**, you've got to get on with the job that you're doing now.

Present Perfect

FORM

[has/have + past participle]

Examples:

- You **have seen** that movie many times.
- **Have you seen** that movie many times?
- You **have not seen** that movie many times.

Complete List of Present Perfect Forms

USE 1 Unspecified Time Before Now



We use the Present Perfect to say that an action happened at an unspecified time before now. The exact time is not important. You **CANNOT** use the Present Perfect with specific time expressions such as: yesterday, one year ago, last week, when I was a child, when I lived in Japan, at that moment, that day, one day, etc. We **CAN** use the Present Perfect with unspecific expressions such as: ever, never, once, many times, several times, before, so far, already, yet, etc.

Examples:

- I **have seen** that movie twenty times.
- I think I **have met** him once before.
- There **have been** many earthquakes in California.
- People **have traveled** to the Moon.
- People **have not traveled** to Mars.
- **Have you read** the book yet?
- Nobody **has ever climbed** that mountain.
- A: **Has** there ever **been** a war in the United States?
B: Yes, there **has been** a war in the United States.

HOW D- YOU ACTUALLY USE THE PRESENT PERFECT?

The concept of “unspecified time” can be very confusing to English learners. It is best to associate Present Perfect with the following topics:

TOPIC 1 Experience

You can use the Present Perfect to describe your experience. It is like saying, "I have the experience of..." You can also use this tense to say that you have never had a certain experience. The Present Perfect is NOT used to describe a specific event.

Examples:

– I **have been** to France.

THIS SENTENCE MEANS THAT YOU HAVE HAD THE EXPERIENCE OF BEING IN FRANCE.
MAYBE YOU HAVE BEEN THERE ONCE, OR SEVERAL TIMES.

– I **have been** to France **three times**.

YOU CAN ADD THE NUMBER OF TIMES AT THE END OF THE SENTENCE.

– I **have never been** to France.

THIS SENTENCE MEANS THAT YOU HAVE NOT HAD THE EXPERIENCE OF GOING TO FRANCE.

– I think I **have seen** that movie before.

– He **has never traveled** by train.

– Joan **has studied** two foreign languages.

– A: **Have** you ever **met** him?

B: No, I **have not met** him.

TOPIC 2 Change Over Time

We often use the Present Perfect to talk about change that has happened over a period of time.

Examples:

- You **have grown** since the last time I saw you.
- The government **has become** more interested in arts education.
- Japanese **has become** one of the most popular courses at the university since the Asian studies program was established.
- My English **has** really **improved** since I moved to Australia.

TOPIC 3 Accomplishments

We often use the Present Perfect to list the accomplishments of individuals and humanity. You cannot mention a specific time.

Examples:

- Man **has walked** on the Moon.
- Our son **has learned** how to read.
- Doctors **have cured** many deadly diseases.
- Scientists **have split** the atom.

TOPIC 4 An Uncompleted Action You Are Expecting

We often use the Present Perfect to say that an action which we expected has not happened. Using the Present Perfect suggests that we are still waiting for the action to happen.

Examples:

- James **has not finished** his homework yet.
- Susan **hasn't mastered** Japanese, but she can communicate.
- Bill **has still not arrived**.
- The rain **hasn't stopped**.

TOPIC 5 Multiple Actions at Different Times

We also use the Present Perfect to talk about several different actions which have occurred in the past at different times. Present Perfect suggests the process is not complete and more actions are possible.

Examples:

- The army **has attacked** that city five times.
- I **have had** four quizzes and five tests so far this semester.
- We **have had** many major problems while working on this project.
- She **has talked** to several specialists about her problem, but nobody knows why she is sick.

TIME EXPRESSIONS WITH PRESENT PERFECT

When we use the Present Perfect it means that something has happened at some point in our lives before now. Remember, the exact time the action happened is not important.



Sometimes, we want to limit the time we are looking in for an experience. We can do this with expressions such as: in the last week, in the last year, this week, this month, so far, up to now, etc.



Examples:

- **Have you been to Mexico in the last year?**
- **I have seen that movie six times in the last month.**

- They **have had** three tests in the last week.
- She graduated from university less than three years ago. She **has worked** for three different companies so far.
- My car **has broken** down three times **this week**.

NOTICE

“Last year” and “in the last year” are very different in meaning. “Last year” means the year before now, and it is considered a specific time which requires **Simple Past**. “In the last year” means from 365 days ago until now. It is not considered a specific time, so it requires **Present Perfect**.

Examples:

- I **went** to Mexic- **last year**.

I WENT To MEXIC- IN THE CALENDAR YEAR BEFORE THIS ONE.

- I **have been** to Mexic- **in the last year**.

I HAVE BEEN To MEXIC- AT LEAST ONCE AT SOME POINT BETWEEN 365 DAYS AGO AND NOW.

USE 2 Duration From the Past Until Now (Non-Continuous Verbs)



With **Non-Continuous Verbs** and non-continuous uses of **Mixed Verbs**, we use the Present Perfect to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now. “For five minutes,” “for two weeks,” and “since Tuesday” are all durations which can be used with the Present Perfect.

Examples:

- I **have had** a cold for two weeks.
- She **has been** in England for six months.
- Mary **has loved** chocolate since she was a little girl.

Although the above use of Present Perfect is normally limited to Non-Continuous Verbs and non-continuous uses of Mixed Verbs, the words “live,” “work,” “teach,” and “study” are sometimes used in this way even though they are NOT Non-Continuous Verbs.

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You have **only** seen that movie one time.
- Have you **only** seen that movie one time?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- Many tourists **have visited** that castle. ACTIVE
- That castle **has been visited** by many tourists. PASSIVE

UNIT 4.

Unit 4. Speaking: Shopping

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



„The Internet is the biggest revolution that has happened in this century. There is no doubt that it has changed the way we shop today. Because of its numerous benefits, more and more people are preferring to buy things online over the conventional method of going into stores.”

PROMPTS:

- to pick up
- regular customer
- daily needs

- occasionally
- pay in cash / by credit card
- to look after one's needs
- attentive
- bulk / huge
- to cut the price
- to deceive
- assortment
- to be in season
- consumer society
- sale
- brand
- well-stocked
- supply - to bargain
- safe
- to deliver

(Resource: <http://loanpride.com/why-you-should-do-more-online-shopping/> loanpride.com)

Unit 4. Writing: Shopping

Comment on the following thought: **Why You Should Do More Online Shopping**



Write your opinion in about 150–180 words.



Start as follows:

As far as I am concerned....

(www.loanpride.com)

English shopping







- Hello! This is our fourth week of learning together. We hope you have learnt a lot so far and you're going to stay with us next month, too. This week our topic is "Shopping". Let's start.

- ---
- Our reading task is not an easy one. It is rather for advanced learners, but it's worth trying. You can be proud of yourself if you manage to do it well. Before you start, have a look at the possible unknown words with the help of the "Before reading" task.
-  [Before reading Teszt](#)
-  [Reading Teszt](#)
- ---




Misterduncan from You Tube gives very funny examples of how to behave in short conversations.

-  [Misterduncan on Small Talk állomány](#)



In the grammar section we're going to deal with the problem; how to express future. Read through the Hungarian explanation then the English ones, finally practise the different forms.

-  [Expressing Future állomány](#)
- <http://www.englishpage.com/verbpage/simplefuture.html>
-  [Future Continuous állomány](#)
- <http://www.englishpage.com/verbpage/futurecontinuous.html>
-  [Future Perfect állomány](#)
- <http://www.englishpage.com/verbpage/futureperfect.html>
-  [Future tenses- Practice állomány](#)
- http://esl.about.com/library/quiz/blgrquiz_futureforms.htm
-  [Future Tenses - More practice szöveges állomány](#)
- <http://www.english-test.net/esl/learn/english/grammar/ii142/esl-test.php>
-  [Negotiations -Difficult clients állomány](#)
- <http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/business/talkingbusiness/unit4negotiations/4clients.shtml>

You're going to be directed to a website where you can listen and read about different aspects of our topic. First listen to the "Audio" part only, then read the transcript. After this, you can check how you guessed the meanings of explained words.

-  [Shopping - Weekender állomány](#)
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/radio/specials/1412_weekender/page46.shtml
-  [Shopping online állomány](#)
- http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/radio/specials/1549_weekender_extra/page40.shtml
-  [Comprehension Teszt](#)
- ---

Some more vocabulary practice for you.

-  [Shopping - Finding the right word állomány](#)
- <http://www.learnenglishfeelgood.com/vocabulary/esl-buying-things-online1.html>
-  [Shopping - Finding the right word 2 állomány](#)
- <http://www.learnenglishfeelgood.com/vocabulary/esl-buying-things-online2.html>
- ---

Joke:

A story about a manager

One of the owners of a large store was walking through his department one morning. He came across a lad who was reading a newspaper.

"What are you doing?" he asked him.

"Nothing sir," the boy replied.

"What are your wages?"

" A pound a week, sir."

The man took out a pound out of his pocketbook, handed it to the boy and said: " Now get out of here, you are dismissed."

Later he found out that the boy belonged to another firm. He had come for a parcel and had been waiting for it.

• _____

Now, we've come to the point where you have the chance to learn and practise the new vocabulary.





[Words-Shopping Tananyag](#)

• **Shopping and services**

globalisation	globalizáció
consumer society	fogyasztó társadalom
brand	márka
sale	leárazás
to satisfy one's needs	kielégíti az igényeit
multinational	multinacionális
cash	kézpénz
instalment (installment US)	részlet
to overdraw	túllépi a hitelkeretét
VAT, value added tax	ÁFA
to tip	borravalót ad
to forge	hamisít
to purchase	vásárol
down payment	kezdő részlet, befizetés
favourable	kedvező
hire purchase	részletre vásárol
interest	kamat
to owe	tartozik
to run into debt	eladósodik
luxury	luxus
excessive	túlzott

tight budget	szűkös költségvetés
shopaholic	vásárlásmániás
value (e.g. traditional values)	érték
quality	minőség
on display	kirakatban, kiállítva
to condemn	elítél, megvet
mortgage	jelzálog
insignificant	jelentéktelen
warranty	garancia
fragment	töredék
to target	megcéloz
appealing	vonzó
reduction	leárazás
influx	beáramlás
advertisement	reklám
public relations	PR
advertising campaign	reklám kampány
outdoor advertising	kültéri reklámok
trick	trükk
false claim	hamis állítás
approach	megközelítés
eye-catching	figyelem megragadó
property	vagyon
product	termék
interest rate	kamatláb
to afford	megengedhet magának
to ban	betilt
to resist the temptation	ellenáll a kísértésnek

-
-
-  [Pronunciation állomány](#)
- <http://www.howjsay.com/>
-  [Glossary-Shopping Fogalomtár](#)
-

We're going to give you three questions you are likely to be asked in an exam. It's worth thinking them over.

1. What does the concept of globalisation mean to you?
2. How do advertisements affect people's shopping preferences?
3. What are the advantages or disadvantages of supermarkets over small shops?

- The first month has passed, we hope to see you next week.

Shopping online

Have you ever bought anything on the internet? Online shopping is becoming more and more common in the UK and in Weekender, we hear BBC business reporter Russell Padmore explain where else internet shopping is popular and what kinds of things people like to buy on the internet. And people in the UK tell us what they really think about buying online.

Before you listen to the programme, read these comprehension questions. Try to answer them as you listen. You will find the answers in the programme. Check your understanding by trying the quiz in the *Extras section* below.

- 1: Can you name one of the 'developed' countries mentioned in the programme?
- 2: Can you give an example of something people prefer not to buy on the internet?
- 3: What worries people about internet shopping?

LISTEN TO WEEKENDER

ocabulary from the programme

virtually
almost

a significant part
a large part

the retail sector
the area of business where things are sold; in basic terms, shops

to be confined to

to be only in that place

a developed country

a rich country whose industry is advanced

a developing country

a poor country whose industry is not so advanced

old-fashioned

something that was accepted or fashionable once, but isn't any more because it's not modern

to recommend

to suggest that someone should do something or have something because it is good

Shopping and services

globalisation	globalizáció
consumer society	fogyasztó társadalom
brand	márka
sale	leárazás
to satisfy one's needs	kielégíti az igényeit
multinational	multinacionális
cash	készpénz
instalment (installment US)	részlet
to overdraw	túllépi a hitelkeretét
VAT, value added tax	AFA
to tip	borravalót ad
to forge	hamisít
to purchase	vásárol
down payment	kezdő részlet, befizetés
favourable	kedvező
hire purchase	részletre vásárol
interest	kamat
to owe	tartozik
to run into debt	eladósodik
luxury	luxus
excessive	túlzott
consumerism	fogyasztás, vásárlás
tight budget	szűkös költségvetés
shopaholic	vásárlásmániás
value (e.g. traditional values)	érték
quality	minőség
on display	kirakatban, kiállítva
to condemn	elítél, megvet
mortgage	jelzálog
insignificant	jelentéktelen
warranty	garancia
fragment	töredék
to target	megcéloz
appealing	vonzó
reduction	leárazás
influx	beáramlás

advertisement
public relations
advertising campaign
outdoor advertising
trick
false claim
approach
eye-catching
property
product
interest rate
to afford
to ban
to resist the temptation

reklám
PR
reklám kampány
kültéri reklámok
trükk
hamis állítás
megközelítés
figyelem megragadó
vagyon
termék
kamatláb
megengedhet magának
betilt
ellenáll a kísértésnek

Shopping

WORD LIST

Shop Assistant

Can I help you?
What can I do for you?

Are you being served [sd\vd] ?
Sorry, we don't sell stamps.

Anything else? ['eniúin els]
It's on offer.

Buy two for the price [prAis] of one.
How much / many would you like?
What size do you take?

Sorry, we are out of bread [bred].

Would another colour ['kAld] do?
Would you like to try it on?
The fitting room is over there.

The dress suits [suits, sju:ts] you very well.
Pay at the cash desk / till, please.
I'll take this to the cash desk / till for you.
Here you are. / Here you go.
You're welcome.

That's 20 euros/eur- altogether [oiltgedd].
You don't happen to have any change [tfeincfc,], d- you?
Here's your change.

Customer

I need ...

I'd like a bottle ['bu:tl] of milk, please.

Have you got souvenirs [suivd'nid] ?

D- you sell stamps?

Where can I buy post cards?

Where can I get a film for my camera?

Where can I find newspapers?

Are these bottles returnable [n'tdinibl] ?

It doesn't fit me.

It doesn't suit [suit, sju:t] me.

I don't like it.

It's to- small / big / wide / tight [tait] /expensive [ik'spensiv] .

I'm size ...

Have you got this in another [d'nAÓd] size / colour?

May I try this on, please?

Where can I try this on, please?

How much is it?

That's all.

Where is the cash desk / till?

Could I get a receipt [risfct], please?

Could I get a (plastic) bag, please?

(I'm afraid/Sorry) I don't have any change [tfeincfe]?

D- you accept [dk'sept] credit cards?

Commercial English - Information

INFORMATION

I was given your name by Mr Fisher.

We are interested in your samples.

I was interested to hear/know/see that ...

There is much demand for ...

Would you kindly send us model 4DC ?

We would be grateful for further details about your offer.

Please let us know the current freight rate for sea/rail /air/ road transport.

In addition I would like a valid price list.

Would your company be able ...?

Please get in touch with our secretary, Mrs Barnes.

Please reply without delay/by return of post

Weather Vocabulary

Weather Vocabulary



Word <i>Part of speech</i>	Meaning	Example Sentence
airconditioner/ airconditioning <i>noun</i>	an appliance that cools down the air in a home or building	The airconditioner keeps the office nice and comfortable even when it's very hot outside.
avalanche <i>noun</i>	a dangerous slide of snow down a mountain	The skiers were warned about a possible avalanche .
below freezing <i>preposition/adjective</i>	temperature less than 0 degrees Celsius/(32F)	It's supposed to go below freezing before the weekend.
blizzard <i>noun</i>	a storm with lots of snow and wind	The airplane couldn't take-off because of the blizzard .
boiling hot <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression for describing a very hot day	It was boiling hot , so we all jumped into the lake.
breeze <i>noun</i>	light wind	Don't bother with a hat. There is always a breeze near the ocean.

Celsius <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (0 degrees is freezing/100 is boiling)	In the summer, the average temperature here is 20 degrees Celsius .
chilly <i>adjective</i>	cold	It's a bit chilly today, so I think you should wear a coat.
clear <i>adjective</i>	when the sky is blue because no clouds are blocking the sun	On a clear night you can see a lot of stars.
cloud/cloudy <i>noun/adjective</i>	water in the sky that appears as a white or grey mass	It may look cloudy in the morning, but the sun always comes out by afternoon.

cold spell <i>adjective + noun</i>	a period of colder than average weather	They're calling for a cold spell , so we put off our camping trip.
cool <i>adjective</i>	temperature in between warm and cold	The days were boiling hot, but the nights were cool and comfortable for sleeping.
degrees <i>noun</i>	measurement for temperature	I don't feel the heat until it's about forty degrees Celsius outside.
drizzling <i>continuous verb</i>	raining slightly	I think I'll take the dog for a walk. It's only drizzling now.
drought <i>noun</i>	a long period with no rainfall	Forest fires are a serious danger during a drought .
Fahrenheit <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (32 degrees is freezing/212 is boiling)	It was 100 degrees Fahrenheit when we got to San Francisco.
flood <i>noun</i>	overflow of rain water	The flood was so bad, our basement was full of water.
flurries <i>noun</i>	 very light snowfall	There are a few flurries but the snow isn't sticking to the roads.
fog/foggy <i>noun/adjective</i>	thick water vapor that blocks one's vision	We couldn't see the bridge because there was too much fog .

forecast <i>noun/verb</i>	the expected weather for the future	According to the 5 day forecast , it's going to rain on our wedding day.
freezing cold <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression used to describe a very cold day	It was a freezing cold day for the Santa Claus parade.
frost <i>noun</i>	ice crystals on a frozen surface	Some flowers are so strong they can withstand frost .
frostbite <i>noun</i>	a skin condition caused by over exposure to the cold (typically reddish skin with white spots)	I lost my hat while I was skiing, and I ended up with frostbite on my ears.




hail <i>noun</i>	small pieces of ice that fall during a storm	There was so much hail that some of the trailer homes were destroyed.
heat stroke <i>noun</i>	a flu-like condition one can acquire after spending too long in the sun	Bring lots of water and wear a hat to avoid heat stroke in this weather.
heat-wave <i>noun</i>	extremely hot weather that is much higher than average--usually lasts a short time	During the heat-wave we cooled our beds down with ice packs.
humid/humidity <i>adjective/noun</i>	moisture in the air	It feels a lot hotter than it actually is because of the humidity .
hurricane <i>noun</i>	a tropical storm with very strong wind and rain	Half of the buildings on the island were flattened by the hurricane .
icy <i>adjective</i>	slippery because of ice	The roads are icy so please avoid driving down any hills.
lightning <i>noun</i>	electrical discharge and flash between a cloud and the ground	The outdoor pool always closes when the lifeguards think lightning is coming.
mild <i>adjective</i>	temperature that is warmer than average(in a cold season)	It's quite mild out so I didn't bother with a hat or mittens.

meteorologist <i>noun</i>	a person who studies weather patterns	The meteorologist predicted that the cold spell would be over by now.
minus/negative <i>adjective</i>	indicates that a temperature is below zero	It was minus twenty degrees at the top of the skil hill.
overcast <i>adjective</i>	no sun is visible	The sky is overcast this morning, but the sun is supposed to come out by late afternoon.
partly cloudy <i>adverb + adjective</i>	term often used in a weather forecast to indicate that the skies are sunny and cloudy at the same time	Tomorrow's forecast is partly cloudy with clear skies by nightfall.
precipitation	rain or snow that falls on an area	There is very little

<i>noun</i>		precipitation in the desert.
puddle <i>noun</i>	collection of rain water	Children love to splash in puddles when they are wearing rubber boots.
rain/raining/ rainy <i>noun/continuous verb/adjective</i>	water that falls to earth	My hair is all wet and messy from the rain .
raindrop <i>noun</i>	a single measurement of rain	I love catching raindrops on my tongue.
rainbow <i>noun</i>	a band of colours found in the sky after a rainfall	According to legend you can find a pot of gold at the end of a rainbow .
raining cats and dogs <i>idiom</i>	raining heavily	They cancelled the football game because it was raining cats and dogs .
scorching/a scorcher <i>adjective/noun</i>	extremely hot temperature/a very hot day	It was a scorcher , so the whole family slept in the cool basement.
season <i>noun</i>	time of year characterized by certain weather Winter, Spring, Summer, Fall (or Autumn)	My favorite season is Fall, because I love to watch the leaves changing colours.

shower <i>noun</i>	quick/light rainstorm	They've been calling for showers all week, but so far it's been dry.
sleet(similar to hail) <i>noun</i>	rain that freezes as it falls	All-weather-tires are best if you have to drive in sleet .
slush/slushy <i>noun/adjective</i>	snow on the ground that has been rained on	The snow turned to slush as soon as it started to rain.
smog <i>noun</i>	heavy, dark cloud cover caused by pollution	You really notice the smog downtown in this type of humidity.
snow/snowy/snowing <i>noun/adjective/</i>	frozen water that warms slightly as it falls to earth	It is already snowing up in the mountains, so the ski

<i>continuous verb</i>		season should be great this year.
snowstorm <i>noun</i>	large amounts of wind and snow	All of the schools were closed because of the snowstorm .
sun/sunshine/ sunny <i>noun/noun/adj ective</i>	 the gassy star that warms the earth	We hope to have sunshine on the day of the beach picnic.
sunburn <i>noun</i>	painful red/pink skin caused by being in the sun too long	The bald man got a sunburn on his head.
sunglasses/shades <i>noun</i>	dark eyewear that protects you from the sun	I forgot my shades and I was driving right into the sun.
suntan/tanned <i>noun (also verb)/ adjective (also verb)</i>	brown/golden skin caused by long periods of sun exposure	I got a suntan on the cruise, but it has already faded away.
sunscreen/suntan lotion <i>noun</i>	cream that protects your skin from sun damage	Don't forget to reapply your sunscreen when you get out of the lake.
temperature <i>noun</i>	how warm or cold the air is	Can you check the temperature before we get dressed for our walk?

<p>thermometer <i>noun</i></p> 	<p>instrument for measuring the temperature of the air</p>	<p>When I checked the temperature this morning, the thermometer said it was already thirty degrees Celsius.</p>
<p>thunder/thunderstorm <i>noun</i></p>	<p>thunder is a loud noise after lightning, caused by rapid expansion of air superheated by the lightning</p>	<p>Let's close all of the windows. It looks like a thunderstorm is coming.</p>
<p>tornado/cyclone <i>noun</i></p> 	<p>violently spinning windstorm</p>	<p>The tornado picked up everything in its path, including animals and cars.</p>
<p>umbrella <i>noun</i></p> 	<p>held over one's head and body for rain protection</p>	<p>I always keep an umbrella in my car in case of rain.</p>
<p>UV (ultra violet) rays</p>	<p>the damaging rays from the sun</p>	<p>Ultra violet rays can</p>

<i>noun</i>		cause skin cancer if you don't wear sunscreen.
wind/windy <i>noun/adjective</i>	blowing air outside	It's too windy to play golf today.
wind chill factor <i>noun</i>	when the wind makes the air feel colder than the actual temperature	It's minus two, but with the wind chill factor it's minus fifteen.

Internet Shopping

Jo:

You're listening to Weekender from bbclearningenglish.com. I'm Jo Reffin and today we're talking about shopping - but the kind of shopping where you can buy almost anything without even leaving your house!! Yes, we're talking about internet shopping.

We spoke to Russell Padmore from the BBC World Service. He's a business reporter and we went along to one of the busiest shopping streets in London, Oxford Street, to ask him more about internet shopping. First of all, I asked him just how big this trend is in the UK. Listen to him and listen out for a word that means 'almost'.

Russell Padmore

Perhaps 10 years ago we'd have been talking about virtually zero but I can tell you today internet shopping is a really significant part of the retail sector in the UK

Jo:

So 10 years ago, the number of people shopping on the internet was virtually zero.

Virtually is the word meaning almost - almost no one did internet shopping then. However today, internet shopping is a really significant part of the retail sector. A significant part is a large part. Retail basically means selling things - so out of all the things sold now, a large amount of them are sold over the internet.

But is internet shopping popular only in the UK? Which other part of the world is seeing an increase in the use of the internet? Here's Russell again.

Russell Padmore

It's not just confined to the developed economies of the world - it's not just the United States or Western Europe or Japan - elsewhere we're starting to see the internet becoming a serious area where people can do business. In Africa many telecom companies are developing their business -they also see the growth of the internet.

Jo:

Did you catch where there is an increase in the use of the internet?

Yes, Russell talked about Africa. Internet shopping is not only confined to developed countries. To be confined to means to only exist or affect that place - and developed countries are the richer ones with advanced industries - like the United States or Japan as Russell said. So internet shopping isn't only a trend in those places. In developing countries, so poorer countries whose industries aren't so advanced - for example countries in Africa - those developing countries are increasing their use of the internet.

We wanted to know from Russell if internet shopping was likely to get even more popular in the future. But what kind of things does he say people don't like to buy online?

Russell Padmore

Internet shopping is definitely going to increase in the future - it's changing the traditional method of shopping - but let's remember there are some things that people still want to buy in a shop - if you're buying a pair of trousers - if you're buying a new shirt - people still feel more comfortable going into let's say one of these grand shops where we're here on Oxford St in London - they want to see that particular piece of clothing - feel it touch it - perhaps more importantly if it's a pair of shoes try them on

Jo:

So Russell thinks internet shopping is definitely going to get more and more popular in the future. But what don't people like to buy online? Well as you might expect - clothes. If you're buying a shirt, trousers or shoes people still like to go into a shop and try things on, see them, touch them before they buy - you can't of course do this if you're internet shopping. And this man would agree - when we asked him if he ever did internet shopping he said he preferred going to a shop to buy things. Which word does he use that means the opposite of modern?

Man

Personally I don't do a lot of internet shopping. When it actually comes to buying products maybe I'm a bit old fashioned - I like to go into a shop and get them.

Jo:

So this man thinks he is perhaps a bit old-fashioned, not very modern. Some people we asked are actually a bit worried about shopping on the internet - but what is it that worries them?

Man

I use the internet quite a lot - I just sometimes worry about putting my card details in

Woman

The problem is that you have to put all the information related to your debit card and credit card which I think is so dangerous

Jo:

So these people are worried about putting their credit and debit card details into the computer. They think it's not safe because someone might be able to get those details and buy things with their card. But then some people love it – like this man – he thoroughly recommends it he thinks everyone should do it.

Man

Internet shopping - I thoroughly recommend it and I must say I practise it all the time –I'm not afraid at all.

Jo:

And speaking of the internet - you can look at all of the language from today's programme on our website bbclearningenglish.com. That's all for today – bye for now.

source: bbclearningenglish.com

A story about a manager

One of the owners of a large store was walking through his department one morning. He came across a lad who was reading a newspaper.

„What are you doing?” he asked him.

„Nothing sir,” the boy replied.

„What are your wages?” „ A pound a week, sir.”

The man took out a pound out of his pocketbook, handed it to the boy and said: „ Now get out of here, you are dismissed.”

Later he found out that the boy belonged to another firm. He had come for a parcel and had been waiting for it.

Negotiations: difficult clients

Introduction

If your company offers a service, you may find that you have to deal with complaints from customers and clients. In this unit, we look at some phrases that may be helpful in this situation.

Think

Imagine that you work in a travel agency and a customer comes in to complain about a recent holiday. The customer tells you that they experienced a bad delay at the airport which ruined their holiday. How do you respond? After you've thought of five possible responses, [click here for some more ideas](#).

Listen

Now listen to two audio clips of people making complaints. As you listen, see if you can hear the phrases above.

Negotiations: difficult clients

Check understanding

Check your understanding by reading the scripts below: Clip 1

Angéla: Hello, I'm Angéla, I'm the customer services manager. Would you like to come

with me and come and take a seat and **you can explain to me what actually is the problem?**

Alison: Okay, okay, fine.

Angéla: **Can I take your name?**

Alison: Yes, my name's Alison.

Angéla: Okay. Alison, if you'd like to make yourself comfortable. As I said, I am the customer services manager and I'd like to help you. **I understand you are having a few problems. Would you like to just explain from the beginning what's happened?**

Alison: Well, yes. I've just come back from one of your holidays. I went to Crete, in Greece, got back last week and the whole thing was a disaster.

Angéla: Would you like to just explain from the beginning what's happened?

Alison: Well, yes. To start with, when we got to the airport in, in Crete, we had a two-hour wait on the coach, I think there was a delayed flight or something, and... and...

Angéla: ...Right, that's quite possible...

Alison: ...Yes... And I just can't work out why you didn't take us to our hotel and then come back to the airport to pick up the people from the delayed flight.

Angéla: Right, **I'm sorry for that wait. I don't know what the problem was.** You

mentioned a delayed flight there. **As you can imagine**, you probably weren't the only family on the coach waiting, and to ferry people to and from resort to the airport would have been a lot of extra work and they like to try and keep everybody together who are going on the same flight. **I can actually look into that for you ...**

Clip 2

Karén: Hello!

Mark: Hello, can I speak to despatch, please?

Karén: You're through to despatch.

Mark: Right. Well, I phoned two days ago to say that I hadn't received delivery of my order and I'm ringing again to say it still hasn't arrived.

Karén: Can I just take your name please?

Mark: Yes, it's Mark Anderson.

Karén: Ah! I think there's been a problem with that order, Mr Anderson.

Mark: What kind of problem?

Karén: Oh, I don't know offhand. **Let me check for you.** Yes, part of the order didn't arrive here at the depót, so I couldn't send it out until we'd received everything.

Mark: Well, surely that was your problem to sort out without my having to call you back - again. I did phone and draw your attention to this a couple of days ago. Look, I placed this order weeks ago. I'm sorry, it's just not good enough.

Karén: Yeah, **I'm sorry about this, Mr Anderson. I'm sorry for the**

inconvenience, but **I can assure you** we'll do everything we can to send it out to you today.

Questions to the topic

We're going to give you three questions you are likely to be asked in an exam.

It's worth thinking them over.

1. What does the concept of globalisation mean to you?
2. How do advertisements affect people's shopping preferences?
3. What are the advantages or disadvantages of supermarkets over small shops?

Shopping Weekender

It has to be said that some of us just LOVE to shop and are even happy to shop until we drop!

This week saw the biggest internet shopping day of the entire year but are there any other ways to shop which also exclude a trip to the highstreet and logging onto the internet? Yvonne Archer discovers both the delights and the downfalls of teleshopping!

You can also try our quiz in the Extras section below to practise some of the language used in the programme and you can refer to the vocabulary table below for helpful language.

Listen to Weekender!

WORDS AND PHRASES FROM THE PROGRAMME

mind-numbing

extremely boring

numb

without feeling or emotion, e.g. a part of your body or your mind

parade

a line of people or vehicles moving along for a special event, but in this case, a line of goods that are on display for viewers to buy

a coincidence

when two or more related things or ideas unexpectedly happen at the same time

upsides and downsides

advantages and disadvantages

obsessed

a negative way to describe repeated and continued thoughts, behaviour or actions, e.g. when someone is always thinking about and going shopping

addicted to

the need and desire to behave in a certain way or to use something without being able to stop, even if it is very harmful

shopaholic, workaholic, chocoholic, alcoholic

someone who's addicted to shopping, work, chocolate, alcohol

hard-wearing, durable, long-lasting

strong and lasts for a long time even if it's used often, e.g. a rug

Weekender Teleshopping

Yvonne:

Hello– I'm Yvonne Archer and this is Weekender!

What comes to mind when you think of a weekend– perhaps visiting museums, going to the theatre and of course, a spot of shopping? What if there's a heavy rainstorm and you still need to go shopping?

This week saw the biggest internet shopping day of the year– when the most money is made from people buying goods on the World Wide Web. But are there any alternatives where shopping from home can be combined with a spot of entertainment? Well teleshopping allows you to sit back and do just that... no rain, no cold, no crowds and no journey to the shops. But is teleshopping a perfect solution? What does this man think?

WOULD YOU CONSIDER TEleshopping?

I can't think of anything more mind–numbing than sitting in front of the TV watching people parade goods...

Yvonne:

As that man describes it– there's a constant ,parade' of goods. The presenters try to entertain teleshoppers by showing us how to use and even wear the items that are on sale. But that man still thinks that teleshopping is extremely boring. Did you notice the term he used to mean ,extremely boring'?

WOULD YOU CONSIDER TEleshopping?

I can't think of anything more mind-numbing.

Yvonne:

He finds teleshopping 'mind-numbing' because watching so much television makes it feel as though his mind has stopped working properly... it makes his mind numb! Can you think of any 'mind-numbing' activities? Sadly, I can! This man has tried teleshopping- but is he happy with his purchase and what did he buy? Try to find out and listen out for the way he begins his comment...

Funnily enough,

Funnily enough, yeah, I bought something about a month ago. Yeah it was a little digital camera. It arrived and I was quite pleased, yeah.

Yvonne:

So a rather pleasantly surprised and satisfied customer who bought a digital camera. He began his comment with 'Funnily enough...'- a rather charming way to start talking about something that surprised you a little bit or was a coincidence.

Funnily enough,

Funnily enough, yeah, I bought something about a month ago.

Yvonne:

The advantages of teleshopping are obvious- especially if you find it difficult to move around. But John Nicholson, who works for a busy teleshopping company here in London, says that there may be two disadvantages that we haven't considered. What are those two disadvantages?

John Nicholson

The downsides to teleshopping is that unlike on the high Street where you're free to choose whatever you want to buy, with teleshopping, you have to wait and see what's being offered to you. Also, I think there's a danger that sometimes people can get a little obsessed and repeatedly buy things only stopping when their money runs out.

Yvonne:

If you actually go to the shops, you can look for and buy things straightaway. But with teleshopping, there can be a lot of watching and waiting involved. And the other disadvantage was much more serious. Did you catch it?

John Nicholson

I think there's a danger that sometimes people can get a little obsessed.

Yvonne:

Some people can't stop shopping even when they've no money left at all–

which can become a serious problem– like any addiction. Someone who's addicted to shopping is sometimes called a ,shopaholic'. And that suffix–'holic'– is also used to create nouns describing people who suffer from other addictions– for example, listen out for ,workaholic', ,chocoholic' and ,alcoholic' after today's programme. I'm sure you'll be able to work out what they mean.

So given the downsides, how do the teleshopping companies persuade us that their goods are the best, making us buy them? Here's John again:

John Nicholson– a rug

In the teleshopping industry, a rug for example might be „hard-wearing, durable, long-lasting”... all of which mean the same thing, but create an illusion in the viewer's mind.

Yvonne:

Here's

Ah, so the language that the teleshopping presenters use is responsible. another interesting example of teleshopping language:

John Nicholson– antique of the future

We'll use phrases such as ,an antique of the future'

Yvonne:

Describing something new as ,an antique of the future' suggests that if we buy and keep it for a very long time, it could become very valuable and worth keeping for future generations...

John Nicholson– antique of the future

,An antique of the future'

Yvonne:

Clever stuff, eh– or is it? What do you think?

That's all for today... Goodbye!

Source: bbclearningenglish.com

Future Continuous

Future Continuous has two different forms: “will be doing “ and “be going to be doing.” Unlike Simple Future forms, Future Continuous forms are usually interchangeable.

FORM FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH “WILL”

[will be + present participle]

Examples:

- You **will be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight.
- **Will you be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight?
- You **will not be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight.

FORM FUTURE CONTINUOUS WITH “BE GOING TO “

[am/is/are + going to be + present participle]

Examples:

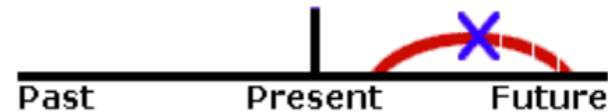
- You **are going to be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight.
- Are you **going to be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight?

– You are **not going to be waiting** for her when her plane arrives tonight.

REMEMBER: It is possible to use either “will” or “be going to” to create the Future Continuous with little difference in meaning.

Complete List of Future Continuous Forms

USE 1 INTERRUPTED ACTION IN THE FUTURE



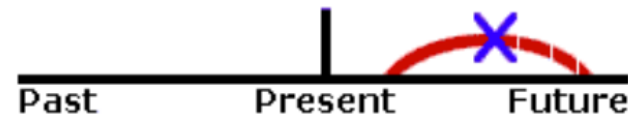
Use the Future Continuous to indicate that a longer action in the future will be interrupted by a shorter action in the future. Remember this can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time.

Examples:

- I **will be watching** TV when she *arrives* tonight.
- I **will be waiting** for you when your bus *arrives*.
- I **am going to be staying** at the Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you need to contact me.
- He **will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she *arrives*.

Notice in the examples above that the interruptions (marked in italics) are in Simple Present rather than Simple Future. This is because the interruptions are in time clauses, and you cannot use future tenses in time clauses.

USE 2 SPECIFIC TIME AS AN INTERRUPTION IN THE FUTURE



In USE 1, described above, the Future Continuous is interrupted by a short action in the future. In addition to using short actions as interruptions, you can also use a specific time as an interruption.

Examples:

– Tonight at 6 PM, I **am going to be eating** dinner.

/ WILL BE IN THE PROCESS OF EATING DINNER.

– At midnight tonight, **we will still be driving** through the desert.

WE WILL BE IN THE PROCESS OF DRIVING THROUGH THE DESERT

REMEMBER In the Simple Future, a specific time is used to show the time an action will begin or end. In the Future Continuous, a specific time interrupts the action.

Examples:

– Tonight at 6 PM, I **am going to eat** dinner.

I AM GOING TO START EATING AT 6 PM.

– Tonight at 6 PM, I **am going to be eating** dinner.

I AM GOING TO START EARLIER AND I WILL BE IN THE PROCESS OF EATING DINNER AT 6PM.

USE 3 PARALLEL ACTIONS IN THE FUTURE



When you use the Future Continuous with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions will be happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.

Examples:

– I **am going to be studying** and he **is going to be making** dinner.

– Tonight, they **will be eating** dinner, **discussing** their plans, and **having** a good time.

– While Ellen *is reading*, Tim **will be watching** television.

NOTICE “IS READING” BECAUSE OF THE TIME CLAUSE CONTAINING “WHILE.” (SEE EXPLANATION BELOW)

USE 4 ATMOSPHERE IN THE FUTURE

In English, we often use a series of Parallel Actions to describe atmosphere at a specific point in the future.

Examples:

– When I arrive at the party, everybody **is going to be celebrating**.

Some **will be dancing**.

Others **are going to be talking**.

A few people **will be eating** pizza, and several people **are going to be drinking** beer.

They always do the same thing.

REMEMBER No Future in Time Clauses

Like all future tenses, the Future Continuous cannot be used in clauses beginning with time expressions such as: when, while, before, after, by the time, as soon as, if, unless, etc. Instead of Future Continuous, Present Continuous is used.

Examples:

– While **I am going to be finishing** my homework, she is going to make dinner. Not Correct

– While **I am finishing** my homework, she is going to make dinner. Correct

AND REMEMBER Non-Continuous Verbs / Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that **Non-Continuous Verbs** cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for **Mixed Verbs** cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Future Continuous with these verbs, you must use **Simple Future**.

Examples:

- Jane **will be being** at my house when you arrive. Not Correct
- Jane **will be** at my house when you arrive. Correct

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You will **still** be waiting for her when her plane arrives.
- Will you **still** be waiting for her when her plane arrives?
- You are **still** going to be waiting for her when her plane arrives.
- Are you **still** going to be waiting for her when her plane arrives?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- At 8:00 PM tonight, John **will be washing** the dishes. ACTIVE
- At 8:00 PM tonight, the dishes **will be being washed** by John. PASSIVE
- At 8:00 PM tonight, John is **going to be washing** the dishes. ACTIVE
- At 8:00 PM tonight, the dishes **are going to be being washed** by John. PASSIVE

NOTE: Passive forms of the Future Continuous are not common.

Future Perfect

Future Perfect has two different forms: “will have done” and “be going to have done.” Unlike Simple Future forms, Future Perfect forms are usually interchangeable.

FORM FUTURE PERFECT WITH “WILL”

[will have + past participle]

Examples:

- You **will have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.
- **Will you have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.?
- You **will not have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.

FORM FUTURE PERFECT WITH “BE GOING TO”

[am/is/are + going to have + past participle]

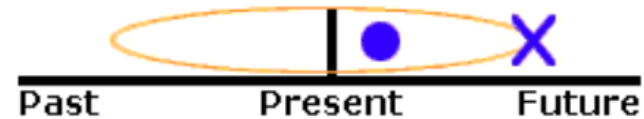
Examples:

- You **are going to have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.
- **Are you going to have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.?
- You **are not going to have perfected** your English by the time you come back from the U.S.

NOTE: It is possible to use either “will” or “be going to” to create the Future Perfect with little or no difference in meaning.

Complete List of Future Perfect Forms

USE 1 Completed Action Before Something in the Future



The Future Perfect expresses the idea that something will occur before another action in the future. It can also show that something will happen before a specific time in the future.

Examples:

By next November, I **will have received** my promotion.

By the time he gets home, she **is going to have cleaned** the entire house.

I **am not going to have finished** this test by 3 o'clock.

Will she have learned enough Chinese to communicate before she moves to Beijing?

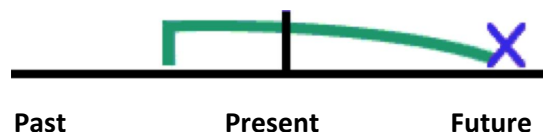
Sam is probably **going to have completed** the proposal by the time he leaves this afternoon.

By the time I finish this course, I **will have taken** ten tests.

How many countries **are you going to have visited** by the time you turn 50?

Notice in the examples above that the reference points (*marked in italics*) are in **Simple Present** rather than **Simple Future**. This is because the interruptions are in **time clauses**, and you cannot use future tenses in time clauses.

USE 2 DURATION BEFORE SOMETHING IN THE FUTURE (NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS)



With **Non-Continuous Verbs** and some non-continuous uses of **Mixed Verbs**, we use the Future Perfect to show that something will continue up until another action in the future.

Examples:

- I **will have been** in London for six months by the time I leave.
- By Monday, Susan **is going to have had** my book for a week.

Although the above use of Future Perfect is normally limited to Non-Continuous Verbs and non-continuous uses of Mixed Verbs, the words “live,” “work,” “teach,” and “study” are sometimes used in this way even though they are NOT Non-Continuous Verbs.

REMEMBER No Future in Time Clauses

Like all future forms, the Future Perfect cannot be used in clauses beginning with time expressions such as: when, while, before, after, by the time, as soon as, if, unless, etc. Instead of Future Perfect, **Present Perfect** is used.

Examples:

- I am going to see a movie when I **will have finished** my homework. Not Correct
- I am going to see a movie when I **have finished** my homework. Correct

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You will **only** have learned a few words.
- Will you **only** have learned a few words?
- You are **only** going to have learned a few words.
- Are you **only** going to have learned a few words?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

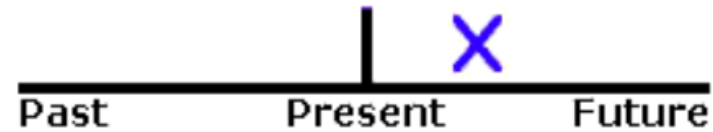
Examples:

- They **will have completed** the project before the deadline. ACTIVE
- The project **will have been completed** before the deadline. PASSIVE

- They **are going to have completed** the project before the deadline. ACTIVE
- The project **is going to have been completed** before the deadline. PASSIVE

Simple Future

Simple Future has two different forms in English: „will” and „be going to.” Although the two forms can sometimes be used interchangeably, they often express two very different meanings. These different meanings might seem to– abstract at first, but with time and practice, the differences will become clear. Both „will” and „be going to” refer to a specific time in the future.



FORM Will

[will + verb]

Examples:

- You **will help** him later.
- **Will** you **help** him later?
- You **will not help** him later

FORM Be Going To

[am/is/are + going to + verb]

Examples:

- You **are going to meet** Jane tonight.
- **Are you going to meet** Jane tonight?
- You **are not going to meet** Jane tonight

Complete List of Simple Future Forms

USE 1 „WILL” TO EXPRESS A VOLUNTARY ACTION

I” often suggests that a speaker will d- something voluntarily. A voluntary action is one the speaker offers to d- for someone else. Often, we use „will” to respond to someone else’s complaint or request for help. We also use „will” when we request that someone help us or volunteer to d- something for us. Similarly, we use „will not” or „won’t” when we refuse to voluntarily d- something.

Examples:

- I **will send** you the information when I get it.
- I **will translate** the email,so Mr. Smith can read it.
- **Will you help** me move this heavy table?

- **Will you make** dinner?
- I **will not do** your homework for you.
- I **won't do** all the housework myself!
- A: I'm really hungry.
B: **I'll make** some sandwiches.
- A: I'm so tired. I'm about to fall asleep.
B: **I'll get** you some coffee.
- A: The phone is ringing.
B: **I'll get** it.

USE 2 „WILL” TO EXPRESS A PROMISE

„Will” is usually used in promises.

Examples:

- I **will call** you when I arrive.
- If I am elected President of the United States, I **will make** sure everyone has access to inexpensive health insurance.
- I promise I **will not tell** him about the surprise party.
- Don't worry, **I'll be** careful.
- I **won't tell** anyone your secret.

USE 3 „BE GOING TO” TO EXPRESS A PLÁN

„Be going to” expresses that something is a plán. It expresses the idea that a person intends to do something in the future. It does not matter whether the plán is realistic or not.

Examples:

He **is going to spend** his vacation in Hawaii.

She **is not going to spend** her vacation in Hawaii.

A: When **are we going to meet** each other tonight?

B: We **are going to meet** at 6 PM.

I**m going to be** an actor when I grow up.

Michelle **is going to begin** medical school next year.

They **are going to drive** all the way to Alaska.

Wh- **are you going to invite** to the party?

A: Wh- **is going to make** John’s birthday cake?

B: Sue **is going to make** John’s birthday cake.

USE 4 „WILL” OR „BE GOING TO” TO EXPRESS A PREDICTION

Both „will” and „be going to” can express the idea of a general prediction about the future. Predictions are guesses about what might happen in the future. In „prediction” sentences, the subject usually has little control over the future and therefore USES 1-3 do not apply. In the following examples, there is a difference in meaning.

Examples:

- The year 2222 **will be** a very interesting year.
- The year 2222 **is going to be** a very interesting year.
- John Smith **will be** the next President.
- John Smith **is going to be** the next President.
- The movie „Zenith” **will win** several Academy Awards.
- The movie „Zenith” **is going to win** several Academy Awards.

IMPORTANT

In the Simple Future, it is not always clear which USE the speaker has in mind. Often, there is more than one way to interpret a sentence's meaning.

N- FUTURE IN TIME CLAUSES

Like all future forms, the Simple Future cannot be used in clauses beginning with time expressions such as: when, while, before, after, by the time, as soon as, if, unless, etc. Instead of Simple Future, Simple Present is used.

Examples:

- When you **will arrive** tonight, we will go out for dinner. **Not Correct**
- When you **arrive** tonight, we will go out for dinner. **Correct**

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You will **never** help him.
- Will you **ever** help him?
- You are **never** going to meet Jane.
- Are you **ever** going to meet Jane?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

– John **will finish** the work by 5:00 PM. **ACTIVE**

– The work **will be finished** by 5:00 PM. **PASSIVE**

– Sally **is going to make** a beautiful dinner tonight. **ACTIVE**

A beautiful dinner **is going to be made** by Sally tonight. **PASSIVE**

UNIT 5.

Past Perfect

FORM

[had + past participle]

Examples:

- You **had studied** English before you moved to New York.
- **Had** you **studied** English before you moved to New York?
- You **had not studied** English before you moved to New York.

Complete List of Past Perfect Forms

USE 1 COMPLETED ACTION BEFORE SOMETHING IN THE PAST



The Past Perfect expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.

Examples:

- I **had** never **seen** such a beautiful beach before I went to Kauai.
- I did not have any money because I **had lost** my wallet.
- Tony knew Istanbul so well because he **had visited** the city several times.
- **Had** Susan ever **studied** Thai before she moved to Thailand?
- She only understood the movie because she **had read** the book.
- Kristine **had** never **been** to an opera before last night.
- We were not able to get a hotel room because we **had not booked** in advance.
- A: **Had** you ever visited the U.S. before your trip in 2006?
B: Yes, I **had been** to the U.S. once before.

USE 2 DURATION BEFORE SOMETHING IN THE PAST (NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS)

With **Non-Continuous Verbs** and some non-continuous uses of **Mixed Verbs**, we use the Past Perfect to show that something started in the past and continued up until another action in the past.

Examples:

- We **had had** that car for ten years before it broke down.
- By the time Alex finished his studies, he **had been** in London for over eight years.
- They felt bad about selling the house because they **had owned** it for more than forty years.

Although the above use of Past Perfect is normally limited to Non-Continuous Verbs and noncontinuous uses of Mixed Verbs, the words „live,” „work,” „teach,” and „study” are sometimes used in this way even though they are NOT Non-Continuous Verbs.

IMPORTANT Specific Times with the Past Perfect

Unlike with the **Present Perfect**, it is possible to use specific time words or phrases with the **Past Perfect**. Although this is possible, it is usually not necessary.

Examples:

- She **had visited** her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.

MOREOVER

If the **Past Perfect** action did occur at a specific time, the **Simple Past** can be used instead of the **Past Perfect** when „before” or „after” is used in the sentence. The words „before” and „after” actually tell you what happens first, so the **Past Perfect** is optional. For this reason, both sentences below are correct.

Examples:

- She **had visited** her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.
- She **visited** her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.

HOWEVER

If the **Past Perfect** is not referring to an action at a specific time, **Past Perfect** is not optional. Compare the examples below. Here **Past Perfect** is referring to a lack of experience rather than an action at a specific time. For this reason, **Simple Past** cannot be used.



Examples:

- She never **saw** a bear before she moved to Alaska. *Not Correct*
- She **had never seen** a bear before she moved to Alaska. **Correct**

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You had **previously** studied English before you moved to New York.
- Had you **previously** studied English before you moved to New York?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- George **had repaired** many cars before he received his mechanic's license. **Active**
- Many cars **had been repaired** by George before he received his mechanic's license. **Passive**

Past Perfect Continuous

FORM

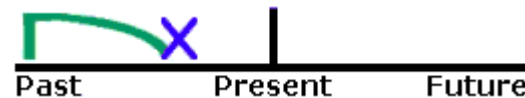
[had been + present participle]

Examples:

- You **had been waiting** there for more than two hours when she finally arrived.
- **Had you been waiting** there for more than two hours when she finally arrived?
- You **had not been waiting** there for more than two hours when she finally arrived.

Complete List of Past Perfect Continuous Forms

USE 1 DURATION BEFORE SOMETHING IN THE PAST



We use the Past Perfect Continuous to show that something started in the past and continued up until another time in the past. „For five minutes” and „for two weeks” are both durations which can be used with the Past Perfect Continuous. Notice that this is related to the [Present Perfect Continuous](#); however, the duration does not continue until now, it stops before something else in the past.

Examples:

- They **had been talking** for over an hour before Tony arrived.
- She **had been working** at that company for three years when it went out of business.
- How long **had you been waiting** to get on the bus?
- Mike wanted to sit down because he **had been standing** all day at work.
- James **had been teaching** at the university for more than a year before he left for Asia.
- A: How long **had you been studying** Turkish before you moved to Ankara?
B: I **had not been studying** Turkish very long.

USE 2 CAUSE OF SOMETHING IN THE PAST

Using the Past Perfect Continuous before another action in the past is a good way to show cause and effect.

Examples:

- Jason was tired because he **had been jogging**.
- Sam gained weight because he **had been overeating**.
- Betty failed the final test because she **had not been attending** class.

Past Continuous vs. Past Perfect Continuous

If you do not include a duration such as „for five minutes,” „for two weeks” or „since Friday,” many English speakers choose to use the Past Continuous rather than the Past Perfect Continuous. Be careful because this can change the meaning of the sentence. Past Continuous emphasizes interrupted actions, whereas Past Perfect Continuous emphasizes a duration of time before something in the past. Study the examples below to understand the difference.

Examples:

- He was tired because he **was exercising** so hard.

This sentence emphasizes that he was tired because he was exercising at that exact moment.

- He was tired because he **had been exercising** so hard.

This sentence emphasizes that he was tired because he had been exercising over a period of time. It is possible that he was still exercising at that moment OR that he had just finished.

REMEMBER NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS / MIXED VERBS

It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Past Perfect Continuous with these verbs, you must use Past Perfect.

Examples:

- The motorcycle **had been belonging** to George for years before Tina bought it. Not Correct
- The motorcycle **had belonged** to George for years before Tina bought it. Correct

ADVERB PLACEMENT

The examples below show the placement for grammar adverbs such as: always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.

Examples:

- You had **only** been waiting there for a few minutes when she arrived.
- Had you **only** been waiting there for a few minutes when she arrived?

ACTIVE / PASSIVE

Examples:

- Chef Jones **had been preparing** the restaurant's fantastic dinners for two years before he moved to Paris. **Active**
- The restaurant's fantastic dinners **had been being prepared** by Chef Jones for two years before he moved to Paris. **Passive**

NOTE: Passive forms of the Past Perfect Continuous are not common.

Unit 5. Listening: A poem for you

I expect to pass through this world but once; any good thing therefore that I can do, or any kindness that I can show to any fellow-creature, let me do it now; let me not defer or neglect it, for I shall not pass this way again.

forrás:

(Resource: www.englishclud.com)

Unit 5. Listening: Ethical travel

Yvonne:

This weekend, thousands and thousands of people will travel to countries across the world. And in Britain alone, about 60 million people take a holiday abroad each year! But forget the tourists and the people in the travel business for now because they're happy. There are other people we need to think about...

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

We're not making the connections between their poverty and our luxury.

I'm Yvonne Archer and you're listening to Weekender with bbclearningenglish.com.

Most of us have probably heard of 'package' and 'all inclusive' holidays but when I asked around Bush House, not many of us had heard of 'ethical travel'. Of course by now, we all know that long plane journeys cause serious damage to our environment but with 'ethical travel', there are other things to think about as well. Here's another clue.

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism

Concern Somebody once told me how when a hotel was built in the area that he lived in in the Pacific, it was as if a spaceship had arrived.

Yvonne:

Trisha Barnett, head of Tourism Concern who've published "The Ethical Travel Guide". There, Trisha was talking about the effect that tourists can have on the people who live in the countries they visit. In that case, the new hotel was like a spaceship - something very alien had landed in the Pacific. As Trisha explains further, try to work out who wasn't 'consulted' and what she means by that...

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

Local people are really never consulted about what's going on around them and that happens equally here, you know, in Britain. You don't have to be abroad. But generally, we're travelling further and further a field and the places that we tend to go to have very poor infrastructures for local people.

Yvonne:

The local people - the community living in the area where the hotel was built, wasn't 'consulted' before the work began. No-one met with them to get their opinions on how the hotel would affect them - and the community certainly wasn't asked for any advice. We also heard how the local people usually have very poor 'infrastructures', for example, little access to transport, electricity and even running water.

'Ethical travel' encourages tourists to be more aware of what's happening in the countries they plan to visit. Hopefully, that will lead to 'sustainable tourism'... we'll be able to visit those countries in the future without causing problems.

The governments of many developing countries encourage tourism as a valuable form of income - an important way to make money. But as Trisha explains, the money is often used to pay off the countries' debts and increase tourism rather than help local people like farmers.

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

The governments, encouraged by The World Bank and the IMF to pay back their debt, bring tourists in as much as they possibly can and feed all their money into the tourism infrastructure rather than say agriculture.

Yvonne:

Did you know that in 24 hours, the average tourist uses the same amount of water that a local person might use in 100 days? Shocking, isn't it? But according to Trisha, knowing what's going on could lead to tourists helping to solve problems rather than adding to them. For example, do we know why the woman she mentions is carrying a metal bucket - a 'pail' - that's full of water on her head? And why isn't she walking on a proper road?

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern You're really not aware that when you use your shower and you plunge into the pool that that water might have been at the cost of local people and they don't have running water at all. And in fact, it's quite picturesque to see a woman walking down a dusty road with a pail on her head full of water. We're not making the connections between their poverty and our luxury and the luxury and that infrastructure is at their cost.

Yvonne:

Is there anything that tourists could do to help in your own country? Do you think that 'tips' - giving extra money to low-paid workers - keeps their wages low? Would gifts of clothes, toiletries, pencils and paper for them and their children be a good idea? And if tourists visited areas away from their hotels, would that provide local people with work as guides and encourage governments to provide better roads and transport?

'Ethical Travel' gives us lots to think and talk about. Why not visit us at bbclearningenglish.com to pick up some of the language you'll find useful to do just that?

Listening: Family and Society

Yvonne:

This weekend, thousands and thousands of people will travel to countries across the world. And in Britain alone, about 60 million people take a holiday abroad each year! But forget the tourists and the people in the travel business for now because they're happy. There are other people we need to think about...

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

We're not making the connections between their poverty and our luxury.

I'm Yvonne Archer and you're listening to Weekender with bbclearningenglish.com.

Most of us have probably heard of 'package' and 'all inclusive' holidays but when I asked around Bush House, not many of us had heard of 'ethical travel'. Of course by now, we all know that long plane journeys cause serious damage to our environment but with 'ethical travel', there are other things to think about as well. Here's another clue.

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

Somebody once told me how when a hotel was built in the area that he lived in in the Pacific, it was as if a spaceship had arrived.

Yvonne:

Trisha Barnett, head of Tourism Concern who've published "The Ethical Travel Guide". There, Trisha was talking about the effect that tourists can have on the people who live in the countries they visit. In that case, the new hotel was like a spaceship - something very alien had landed in the Pacific. As Trisha explains further, try to work out who wasn't 'consulted' and what she means by that...

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

Local people are really never consulted about what's going on around them and that happens equally here, you know, in Britain. You don't have to be abroad. But generally, we're travelling further and further a field and the places that we tend to go to have very poor infrastructures for local people.

Yvonne:

The local people – the community living in the area where the hotel was built,

wasn't 'consulted' before the work began. No-one met with them to get their opinions on how the hotel would affect them - and the community certainly wasn't asked for any advice. We also heard how the local people usually have very poor 'infrastructures', for example, little access to transport, electricity and even running water.

'Ethical travel' encourages tourists to be more aware of what's happening in the countries they plan to visit. Hopefully, that will lead to 'sustainable tourism'... we'll be able to visit those countries in the future without causing problems.

The governments of many developing countries encourage tourism as a valuable form of income - an important way to make money. But as Trisha explains, the money is often used to pay off the countries' debts and increase tourism rather than help local people like farmers.

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

The governments, encouraged by The World Bank and the IMF to pay back their debt, bring tourists in as much as they possibly can and feed all their money into the tourism infrastructure rather than say agriculture. Yvonne:

Did you know that in 24 hours, the average tourist uses the same amount of water that a local person might use in 100 days? Shocking, isn't it? But according to Trisha, knowing what's going on could lead to tourists helping to solve problems rather than adding to them. For example, do we know why the woman she mentions is carrying a metal bucket - a 'pail' - that's full of water on her head? And why isn't she walking on a proper road?

Trisha Barnett, Head of Tourism Concern

You're really not aware that when you use your shower and you plunge into the pool that that water might have been at the cost of local people and they don't have running water at all. And in fact, it's quite picturesque to see a woman walking down a dusty road with a pail on her head full of water. We're not making the connections between their poverty and our luxury and the luxury and that infrastructure is at their cost.

Yvonne:

Is there anything that tourists could do to help in your own country? Do you think that 'tips' - giving extra money to low-paid workers - keeps their wages low? Would gifts of clothes, toiletries, pencils and paper for them and their children be a good idea? And if tourists visited areas away from their hotels, would that provide local people with work as guides and encourage governments to provide better roads and transport?

Unit 5. Reading: Travelling

way of transport	közlekedési mód
carriage	vasúti kocsi
crowded	zsúfolt
noisy	zajos
stinky	bűdös
to miss one's connections	lekési a csatlakozást
to equip	felszerel
to give sy a ride	elvisz valakit
to be due to leave	esedékes az indulása
destination	végállomás
to pull in to the station	beérkezik az állomásra
to travel on business	üzleti ügyben utazik
rail travel	vasúton történő utazás
punctual	pontos
cheap fare	olcsó menetjegy
facing the engine	menetiránnyal szemben
back to the engine	menetiránynak háttal
non-smoking compartment	nem dohányzó fülke
booking-office	jegyiroda
seat by the window	ablak melletti ülés
second-class compartment	másodosztályú fülke
waiting room	váróterem
to queue	sorban állni
choice	választék
passenger train	személyvonat
through train	közvetlen vonat
stop at every single station	minden egyes állomáson megáll
to be afraid of	fél valamitől

air fare	repülőjegy
nervous flier	ideges típus
to board a plane	felszáll a gépre
to check in	bejelentkezik
to weigh	megmér
boarding card	beszállókártya
departure lounge	tranzitváróterem
flight	járat
to take off	felszáll a gép
air sickness	rosszullét (repüléskor)
to hit an air pocket	légörvénybe kerül
economy class	turistaosztály
low-cost airline	fapados járat

accessible	elérhető
to purchase	megvesz
to announce	bejelent
pleasure cruise	sétahajókázás
pier	móló
harbour	kikötő
to drop anchor	lehorgonyoz
gangway	kikötőhid
ferry	komp
to go on board	beszáll
sightseeing tour	városnéző kirándulás
in the country	vidéken
beach	strand
to lie in the sun	napozni
travel agency	utazási iroda
to offer	ajánl
necessary documents	szükséges iratok
individual tour	egyéni kirándulás
package tour	társasutazás
adaptable	alkalmazkodóképes
guide	idegenvezető
to spoil	tönkretesz
to arrange	elrendez
accomodation	szállás
to pack	pakolni
foreign currency	valuta
visa	vízum
customs	vámvizsgálat

to fill in a document	kitölt nyomtatványt
camping site	camping
guest house	vendégház
single room	egyágyas szoba
double room	kétágyas szoba
to overlook	néz valamire
room with a view	szoba kilátással
to book a room	szobát lefoglal
Bed and Breakfast	kiadó szoba reggelivel
reservation	foglalás
to confirm	megerősít
to agree on	megegyezik valamiben
in advance	előre
accordingly	ennek megfelelően
unlimited	korlátlan
currency	valuta
expense	költség
campsite	kemping
to camp rough	vadkempingezik
monument	emlékmű
to ruin	tönkretesz, megrongál
pickpocket	zsebtolvaj
tourist resort	túristaparadicsom
to see sy off	kikísér
scheduled flight	menetrendszerinti járat
chartered flight	bérelt járat
forced landing	kényszerleszállás
to be shipwrecked	hajótörést szenved

Unit 5. Speaking: Travelling

Try to speak about this picture for about 2-3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



„Summer vacation is fast approaching, and while many parents are looking forward to getting away, the idea of travelling with children can be a little daunting to say the least. Fortunately, a little planning can help take the stress out of travelling with children and make vacations a lot easier on the whole family.” (by Lisa Pecos)

PROMPTS:

to plan
complecated
short attention
simple
daycare service for children
to pack
toys and gadgets
vaccines
healthcare abroad
medication
jet lag
motion sickness (vomiting, feel dizzy while travelling)
advance planning

(www.parenting-journals.com/2304/tips-for-travelling-with-children)

UNIT 6.

Unit 6. Grammar: Browsing the net

The three public bodies responsible for television and radio throughout Britain are:

- **The British Broadcasting Corporation** (BBC), which broadcasts television and radio programmes;
- **The Independent Television Commission** (ITC), which licences and regulates commercial television service including cable, satellite and independent teletext services;
- **The Radio Authority**, which licences and regulates commercial radio services, including cable and satellite.

TELEVISION (TELLY)

People in Britain watch on average 25 hours of TV every week. ([Find out about our other leisure activities](#))

Television viewing is Britain's most popular **leisure pastime**. About 96 per cent of the population of Britain have television in their homes. In 1999, 13% of households had satellite television and 9% cable television. It is estimated that about 10 per cent of household have two or more sets. The average viewing time per person is over 25 hours a week.



THERE ARE FIVE MAIN CHANNELS IN BRITAIN:

- two national commercial-free BBC networks, BBC1 and BBC2,
- commercial ITV1, Channel 4 and Channel 5 services.



The BBC channels are commercial free while the other three have commercials. All the channels offer a mixture of drama, light entertainment, films, sport, educational, children's and religious programs, news and current affairs, and documentaries.

The **BBC** has been providing regular television broadcasts since 1936. BBC television productions come from main studios at the Television Centre in west London and other studios in various parts of London.

ITV1 is the most popular commercial television channel in Britain, watched on average by 45 million people every week.

Digital Broadcasting

The country is moving over to digital broadcasting, and the present analogue services will stop in 2012.

FREEVIEW



You can buy a digital box (costs about £40 to £60 and plugs into TV) or a new TV. Additional free digital services include the existing channels BBC1, BBC2, ITV, Channel 4 and Channel 5, and adds BBC3, BBC4, BBC News 24, as well as ITV2, ITV3, ITV4 and a whole load of other channels including the American Channel ABC1. and the BBC's digital channels BBC6 and BBC7. There are about 30 channels in all, known as 'Freeview' channels.



You can also get a wide range of digital radio channels, so you can 'watch' radio on your TV! Many people have to get a better aerial to receive digital television.

CABLE AND SATELLITE TELEVISION

We also have cable and satellite television. The largest satellite programmer is **BSkyB** (British Sky Broadcasting). There are about 300 channels including some American ones like CNN. The kids' channels include Fox Kids, Trouble TV, **CBBC**, and Nick Jr.

Cable TV is provided by NTL, Telewest, or Cable and Wireless. It has about 200 channels and the channels are very similar to Satellite TV.

Television Programmes we watch

Many television programmes are about wildlife, animals, holidays, cooking and gardening.

DIY programs – DIY means do it yourself.

These programmes are very popular as many people love improving their homes and decorating.

Drama and sitcoms

Men Behaving Badly, Inspector Morse, Cracker, Absolutely Fabulous, the Royal Family, Dalziel & Pascoe, Soldier Soldier, Darling Buds of May, Poirot, The Bill, Casualty.

Soaps – a series of television or radio programmes about the lives and problems of a particular group of characters. They run over a long period and are broadcast several times every week. The most popular are “**Eastenders**”, an often shocking drama about life in East London, and “**Coronation Street**”, which is about life in Northern Britain. We also watch “**Emmerdale**”, about life in a farming village and two Australian soaps, “**Neighbours**” and “**Home and Away**”.

Reality programs – Involve filming normal people in their every-day jobs or putting several people in a specially built house where they can be filmed 24 hours-a-day and giving them challenges to do.

People in the house vote on who should be kicked out of the house and in the end the viewers vote for the winner who receives a large amount of money.

AMERICAN PROGRAMS

We watch a lot of American programs including Friends, Will and Grace, Frasier, ER as well as Sabrina the Teenage Witch, The Simpsons and The Fresh Prince of Bel Air.

TV LICENCE

We pay to watch the telly in the UK, no matter how much or how little we watch TV.

In the UK, if you use a TV or any other device to receive or record TV programmes (for example, a VCR, set-top box, DVD recorder or PC with a broadcast card) - you need a [TV Licence](#). You are required by law to have one.

Currently a colour TV Licence costs £135.50 a year and a black and white licence costs £45.50 a year. (last updated August 2007)

There are no advertisements during BBC programs.

Radio

People in Britain listen to an average 15 hours and 50 minutes of radio each week.

The BBC has five national radio networks which together transmit all types of music, news, current affairs, drama, education, sport and a range of feature programmes. There are also 39 BBC local radio stations, and national radio services in Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

Newspapers

There are about 130 daily and Sunday newspapers, over 2,000 weekly newspapers and some 7,000 periodical publications in Britain. The press in Britain is free to comment on matters of public interest, subject to law.

Daily Newspapers sell 322 copies per 1000 people in the UK, the eighth highest rate in the world.

(The Times, The Sun, The Daily Mail)

Unit 6. Grammar: Newspaper

British (not only British) newspapers can be classified into groups according to various criteria

1. *The sales figures and the socioeconomic class of the readers:*

- a. The 'quality' papers have longer, more serious articles than the 'populars'; they are for the upper income groups.
- b. The 'popular' papers appeal to a larger audience than the 'quality' papers and, as a consequence, they have larger sales. They are sensational newspapers with shorter articles and a lot of photos.

2. *The days and time of publication:*

- a. Daily papers: they appear every day, except for Sunday.
- b. Sunday papers: are more like magazines, with long articles about books, plays, films, sport and different stories. Like the dailies, they are either 'quality' or 'popular'.
- c. Morning papers: they go on sale early morning.
- d. Evening papers: whose sales might start as early as midday and continue until the evening.

A newspaper mostly consists of articles on various topics. The text is arranged in columns. The title of an article is called a headline. At the top of the front page you can see the heading. If you are interested in sporting events you can study the sports news which is often to be found at the back. The back page is usually devoted to advertisements. The news about the events at home is called domestic news, while news about events abroad is foreign news. If you examine a typical news story, you will discover that the headline gives you the most important facts. The first paragraph or lead, tells the story briefly. The other paragraphs give details.

Conditionals

A conditional sentence is a sentence containing the word if. There are three basic types of conditional sentence:

1. if clause > present simple tense : main clause > future tense (will) – If you help me, I will help you.

– If I win the lottery, I will buy a new car.

– If it snows tomorrow, we will go skiing.

2. if clause > past simple tense : main clause > would

– If you knew her, you would agree with me.

– If I won the lottery, I would buy a new car.

– If it snowed tomorrow, we would go skiing.

3. if clause > past perfect tense : main clause > would have

– If you had helped me, I would have helped you.

– If I had won the lottery, I would have bought a new car.

– If it had snowed yesterday, we would have gone skiing.

Of course, it is possible to start conditional sentences with the main clause:

- I will buy a new car if I win the lottery.
- I would buy a new car if I won the lottery.
- I would have bought a new car if I had won the lottery.

English speakers choose one of the three conditional structures as follows:

1. *Conditional one* – to express a simple statement of fact or intent

- I will buy a new car if I win the lottery.
- I will go home if you don't stop criticizing me.

You will fail your exams if you don't start working harder.

She will lose all her friends if she continues to talk about them behind their backs.

2. *Conditional two* – to refer to a present unreal situation or to a situation in the future that the speaker thinks is unlikely to happen

- If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car. (*but I don't have a lot of money*)
- If I were you, I would tell him you're sorry. (*but I am not you*)
- If I won the lottery, I would buy a new house. (*but I don't expect to win the lottery*)

– If it snowed tomorrow, we would go skiing. (*but I don't have much hope that it will snow*)

3. *Conditional three* – to refer to the past and situations that did not happen

– If it had snowed yesterday, we would have gone skiing. (*but it didn't snow, so we didn't go skiing*)

– If you had studied harder, you would have passed your test. (*but you didn't study hard, so you didn't pass your test*)

– If I had known that, I would have told you. (*but I didn't know, so I didn't tell you*)

– If she hadn't been driving slowly, she would have had an accident. (*but she was driving slowly, so she didn't have an accident*)

Note: The way native speakers of English express conditions (use *if-clauses*) is much more varied than the 3 rigid combinations of tenses exemplified on this page. Learners should consult a good grammar reference work for a deeper understanding of this complex aspect of English grammar.

The First Conditional

The first conditional has the present simple after ,if', then the future simple in the other clause:

– if + present simple, ... will + infinitive

It's used to talk about things which might happen in the future.

Of course, we can't know what will happen in the future, but this describes possible things, which could easily come true.

– If it **rains**, I **won't go** to the park.

– If I **study** today, I'll **go** to the party tonight.

– If I **have** enough money, I'll **buy** some new shoes.

– She'll **be** late if the train **is** delayed.

– She'll **miss** the bus if she **doesn't leave** soon.

– If I **see** her, I'll **tell** her.

FIRST VS. ZERO CONDITIONAL:

The first conditional describes a *particular* situation, whereas the zero conditional describes what happens *in general*.

For example (zero conditional): if you sit in the sun, you get burned (here I'm talking about every time a person sits in the sun - the burning is a natural consequence of the sitting)

But (first conditional): if you sit in the sun, you'll get burned (here I'm talking about what will happen today, another day might be different)

FIRST VS. SECOND CONDITIONAL:

The first conditional describes things that I think are likely to happen in the future, whereas the second conditional talks about things that I don't think will really happen. It's subjective; it depends on my point of view.

For example (first conditional): If she studies harder, she'll pass the exam (I think it's possible she will study harder and so she'll pass)

But (second conditional): If she studied harder, she would pass the exam (I think that she won't study harder, or it's very unlikely, and so she won't pass)

The Second Conditional

The second conditional uses the past simple after if, then ,would' and the infinitive:

– if + past simple, ...would + infinitive

(We can use ,were' instead of ,was' with ,I' and ,he/she/it'. This is mostly done in formal writing).

It has two uses.

First, we can use it to talk about things in the future that are probably not going to be true. Maybe I'm imagining some dream for example.

- If I **won** the lottery, I **would buy** a big house.(I probably won't win the lottery)
- If I **met** the Queen of England, I **would say** hello.
- She **would travel** all over the world if she **were** rich.
- She **would pass** the exam if she ever **studied**.(She never studies, so this won't happen)

Second, we can use it to talk about something in the present which is impossible, because it's not true. Is that clear?

Have a look at the examples:

- If I **had** his number, I **would call** him. (I don't have his number now, so it's impossible for me to call him).
- If I **were** you, I **wouldn't go** out with that man.

HOW IS THIS DIFFERENT FROM THE FIRST CONDITIONAL?

This kind of conditional sentence is different from the first conditional because this is a lot more unlikely.

For example (second conditional): If I had enough money I would buy a house with twenty bedrooms and a swimming pool (I'm probably not going to have this much money, it's just a dream, not very real)

But (first conditional): If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes (It's much more likely that'll have enough money to buy some shoes)

The Third Conditional

We make the third conditional by using the past perfect after ,if' and then ,would have' and the past participle in the second part of the sentence:

– if + past perfect, ...would + have + past participle

It talks about the past. It's used to describe a situation that didn't happen, and to imagine the result of this situation.

– If she **had studied**, she **would have passed** the exam (but, really we know she didn't study and so she didn't pass)

– If I **hadn't eaten** so much, I **wouldn't have felt** sick (but I did eat a lot, and so I did feel sick).

– If we **had taken** a taxi, we **wouldn't have missed** the plane

– She **wouldn't have been** tired if she **had gone** to bed earlier

– She **would have become** a teacher if she **had gone** to university

– He **would have been** on time for the interview if he **had left** the house at nine

Unit 6. Reading: Words – Entertainment

season ticket	bérlet
performance	előadás
play	színdarab
exciting	izgalmas
acting	a színészek játéka
perfect	tökéletes
boring	unalmas
enjoyable	élvezetes
splendid	ragyogó
box-office	jegypénztár
cloak-room	ruhatár
orchestra	zenekar
stalls	zsöllye, földszinti ülés
box	páholy
dress-circle	első emeleti páholy
balcony	erkély
gallery	karzat
programme booklet	programfüzet
to go out	kialszik
curtain	függöny
to appear	megjelenik
stage	színpad
interval	szünet
part	szerep
adventure film	kalandfilm
thriller	rém történet
science fiction	tudományos-fantasztikus
cartoon	rajzfilm
to switch on	bekapcsol
serial	sorozat

documentary	dokumentumfilm
quiz	rejtvényműsor
newsreel	filmhíradó
feature film	főfilm, játékfilm
to subscribe to a newspaper	előfizet újságra
local daily	helyi napilap
serious paper	komoly lap
national	országos
Radio and TV times	Rádió és TV újság
weekly	hetilap

sensational paper	bulvárlap
party	párt
monthly	havilap
journal	folyóirat
to deal with	foglalkozik vm-vel
home politics	belpolitika
international news	nemzetközi hírek
gossip column	pletykarovat
to deceive the public	becsapni a közvéleményt
unbiased	elfogulatlan
to bias public opinion	befolyásolja a közvéleményt
to be centred around scandals	a botrányokra koncentrálni
to be full of commercials	tele van reklámokkal
to cover a wide range of events	az események széles skálájával foglalkozik
mindless reality shows and soap operas	agyatlan reality show-k és szappanoperák
R-rated	erőszakot tartalmazó
forbidden	tiltott
parental guidance	szülői felügyelet
stay at home type	otthonülő típus
to glue sy to the screen	a képernyőhöz szegez
computer geek	számítógép őrült
accessible	hozzáférhető
to surf the net	szörfözni a világhálón
subscription	előfizetés
restriction	szigorítás
to filter out	kiszűr
adult page	felnőtteknek szóló oldal
to limit	korlátoz
to take sth for granted	természetesnek vesz

in the long run	hosszútávon
artificial intelligence	mesterséges intelligencia
fiction	szépirodalom
short story	novella
poem	vers
book on history	történelmi könyv
novel	regény
easy to read	könnyen olvasható
at a sitting	egyszerre
autobiography	önéletrajz
tale	mese
adventure	kaland
hero	hős
to expose to	kitesz vn-nek
research	kutatás
reliable	megbízható
to claim	állít
to demand	követel
survey	felmérés
to endorse	csatlakozik, megerősít
query	kérdés
to withdraw	visszavonul
contradictory	ellentmondásos
treacherous	álnok, csalfa, kétszínű
to substantiate	adatokkal, bebizonyít, igazol

Vocabulary - JOURNALISM

NEWS

TYPES OF JOURNALISM AND MEDIA

broadcast journalism

news on television or radio

print journalism

written news in newspapers, magazines, etc.

online journalism

news on the internet

citizen journalism

a new expression describing the kind of journalism based on images, audio and reports sent in to news groups by ordinary members of the public who witnessed events

independent media

media groups which are not controlled by the government

broadsheets

newspapers (traditionally larger in size) which generally contain serious reports and analyses of news

tabloids

newspapers (usually smaller than broadsheets) which contain lighter stories and focus more on entertainment and gossip

24 hour news channels

stations which provide news all day and night

rolling news

non-stop news

COMMON JOURNALISM LANGUAGE

to cover a story

to report on an event or development

in-depth coverage of

a thorough analysis of

to verify

to check that something is correct eyewitness reports descriptions of what happened by people who actually saw an event take place

breaking news news

which is just coming in

MEDIA BUSINESS

circulation

how many copies of a newspaper are sold each day or each week

advertising revenue

the money a firm makes by selling space to other firms to advertise their products

Unit 6. Speaking: Entertainment

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



PROMPTS:

reading online

reading books

benefits / advantages

dark side / disadvantages

resources

fiction/thriller/mystery/love and romance/fantasy/children/historical fiction /poetry

improving skills

online library

free reading

highly enjoyable

to reduce television and internet

to read to kids

to have a library day

to go to second hand bookshops

(www.alamy.com)

UNIT 7.

Reported Speech in English

Sometimes you need to tell people about your conversations and change **direct** speech into **indirect** speech. When you do this, you need to make sure that the tenses are correct.

For example, Karen says to Peter: „My job **is** very interesting.” Peter then wants to report this conversation to Sarah a week later. He says: „Karen said that her job **was** interesting.”

When you report a conversation, the tense changes:

„My job **is** very interesting” becomes: She said that her job **was** very interesting.

TENSE CHANGES

„**I'm going** swimming” – She said **she was going** swimming.

„**I haven't seen** the film” – She said she **hadn't seen** the film.

„**I have been working** all morning” – She said she **had been working** all morning.

„**I was working** all week” – She said she **had been working** all week.

„He **went** on holiday to Greece” – She said he **had gone** on holiday to Greece.

Sentences that are already in the „had done” form remain the same:

„**I hadn't seen** him before” – She said she **hadn't seen** him before.

REPORTING MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs also go back one tense.

Will becomes **would**.

For example: „**I will** see him later” – She said she **would** see him later.

Can becomes **could**.

For example: „**I can** swim” – She said she **could** swim.

May becomes **might**.

For example: „**It may** become colder over night” – He said it **might** become colder over night.

Direct speech using would, could, might and should all stay the same in reported speech.

„**You should** speak more” – He said I **should** speak more.

REPORTING QUESTIONS

When you report questions, the word order changes to look like a normal statement.

For example: „**Can you help me?**” – She asked me if I could help her.

„**What’s the time?**” – He asked her what the time was.

OTHER CHANGES

Time expressions also change in reported speech.

today – that day

tomorrow – the day after / the next day

yesterday – the day before / the previous day

now – then

next week – the week after

last week – the week before / the previous week

Other expressions that change:

here – there

this – that

English Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are a type of auxiliary verb which express the mood of another verb. They are used to express ideas such as possibility, prediction, speculation, deduction and necessity.

Modal	Concept	Example
Can	Ability: Permission: Offers :	Julie can swim. Can I come with you? ('May' is also used.) Can I help you?
Could	Possibility: Past ability : Permission : Requests :	That story could be true - who knows! Charlie could swim when he was four years old. Could I use your phone please? Could you tell me the way to the station please?
May	Possibility : Permission :	The President may come to our offices if the meeting finishes before 5 pm. May I borrow your dictionary?

Might	Slight possibility : Past form of 'may' in reported speech.	We might win a prize but I doubt it. The President said he might come.
Should	Advice : Logical deduction :	You should take an umbrella in case it rains. I've revised so I should be ready for the test.
Ought to	Advice : Logical deduction :	You ought to write to your grandmother. 30 € ought to be enough for

		the taxi.
Shall	Offers/suggestions with 'I' and 'we'	Shall I order a taxi? Shall we begin the meeting now?
Will	Future tense auxiliary: Invitations/offers :	Tomorrow I will be in New York. Will you join us for coffee? Won't you come in?

Unit 7 Listening Health

source: <http://www.manythings.org/voa/health/4072.html> (Extract)



(<http://www.news130.com/>)

D- you think getting cold can give you a cold? Is it bad to drink milk when you have a cold? Can chicken soup cure a cold?

Ranit Mishori is a family medicine doctor at Georgetown University Medical Center in Washington. She says colds are more common in winter, but not because of low temperatures. The cold weather just means people stay inside more.

People tend to congregate and be together and the way the common cold virus is transmitted from one person to another is through handshakes, through sneezing, or coughing on one another.” Adults generally get two to three colds a year. Children are likely to catch four or five. Dr. Mishori says some people mistakenly believe they can become resistant to colds.

There are about two hundred different viruses that cause the common cold. People think that once you get infected one time you develop immunity for the rest of your life. This is wrong.” There is still n- cure for the common cold. But Dr. Mishori says there are ways to feel better sooner.

S- if you get a cold and on day one and you start taking about two grams of vitamin C a day, there is evidence that it might shorten the number of days that you will be suffering with these symptoms.” She says honey can also help. Dr. Mishori says honey seems to be especially effective in children with colds. But the Agriculture Department says never to feed honey to babies less than one year old. It says even honey in prepared foods may contain substances that can make babies very sick.

Some people believe in treating a cold with chicken soup. Does it work? Chicken soup has antiinflammatory properties, so it helps reduce the duration of the cold but also- it helps clear the mucus.” Mucus is the sticky substance that can make you cough and have trouble breathing during a cold.

Have you ever heard the old saying “feed a cold, starve a fever”? Dr. Mishori says this is not necessarily a good guideline to follow. She says if you have a cold but don't feel hungry, then don't eat.

But you have to drink a lot and you can drink water or you can drink tea - anything that gets fluids into your body. That's very important.”

Unit 7. Listening: Health and illnesses



What makes you happy? Friends, family, art, money, a big TV screen? Research shows that having lots of money doesn't always mean being happier.

Today Jackie Dalton looks at the language of happiness and unhappiness, with the help of an expert in the field of positive psychology.

At the bottom of this page, you can download a script and an mp3 version of 'Happiness'. You can also follow links to find out more about happiness and Bhutan's happiness formula.

Before you listen to the programme look at these comprehension questions. You can hear the answers in the programme.

- 1: Are people in Britain happier now than they were 50 years ago?
- 2: According to Mark's report, why is good for a country if its people are happy?
- 3: What kinds of things are responsible for creating a poor quality of life?
- 4: What does Dr Baylis think our attitude towards happiness should be?

Listen – Happiness

VOCABULARY FROM THE PROGRAMME

Words related to feeling happy

to feel good

to feel cheerful

to be content

a sense of well-being

Words related to feeling unhappy

to be miserable

to feel low

to feel sad

to feel down

quality of life

a phrase we can use to describe how good life is and how happy we are – or not!

Examples

The quality of life in Switzerland is said to be very high.

People living in the poorer areas of the city have a low quality of life.

life-expectancy

how long people are expected to live

Examples

People who were born hundreds of years ago have a much lower life expectancy than we do now.

You can increase your life expectancy by eating healthy food.

productivity

the amount we achieve at work

Example

Productivity is greater in nations where people are happy.

commuting

travelling to and from work

Example

Most people in London commute using public transport.

self-help books

which are meant to teach us how to make our lives better

to feel ashamed

to feel bad because you think you have done something wrong

Unit 7. Listening: Health and illness

HAPPINESS

Jackie: Hello, I'm Jackie Dalton, welcome to Entertainment.

(sfx laughter)

Jackie: What makes you happy? Friends, family, art, money, a big TV set? Research shows that having lots of money doesn't always mean being happier.

We're about to hear a report on the topic of wealth and happiness. First, let's look at a few words and phrases related to happiness.

If you're feeling happy, you could also express it in these ways.

'I'm feeling quite cheerful today.'

'I'm content.'

'I'm feeling good.'

Another word for 'happiness' can be 'well-being'.

'The older I get, the greater my sense of well-being.'

(sfx crying)

What about unhappiness? That baby sounded miserable. 'Miserable' is a word we sometimes use to describe someone who's not happy. We can also say.

'She's sad.'

'I'm feeling low.'

'He's a bit down today.'

Some of these words will come up in a moment. As you listen to this report by Mark Easton answer this question: Are people in Britain happier now than they were 50 years ago?

REPORT

It is perhaps one of the greatest challenges for developed nations around the world. Once average incomes exceed about fifteen thousand dollars, additional wealth doesn't easily translate into additional well-being. In some countries, notably the United States, it appears that despite being richer than ever in their history, they're getting slightly more miserable. In Britain, happiness levels appear to have remained constant since the 1950s despite the country being three times richer.

Jackie: The answer to the question was 'no'. People in Britain are not happier than they were 50 years ago, Mark said happiness levels have remained constant people are as happy as they were in the 1950s, even though Britain is three times richer. And in the United States, although people are richer, they are a bit more miserable than before.

So is there anything we can do to make us feel good? Some people think the leaders of countries should take action. As you listen to the next part of the report, answer this question. Why is happiness important for nations?

REPORT

Governments are being forced to consider the purpose of politics; should its prime aim be to make people richer or to make people happier? Happy nations tend to be more productive, health is better, people are more creative, life expectancy goes up. Quality of life matters. Jackie: So why is a more cheerful country a better country? Well, there are a lot of reasons, including people are more productive, which means they achieve more at work and life expectancy goes up, meaning they live longer. Mark says quality of life matters. 'Quality of life' is a term often used to talk about how good or bad your life is and how happy you are.

So what are some of the things that make us feel like we have a bad quality of life? Listen to find out.

REPORT

Mobility of labour, commuting, long working hours are all bad for happiness. A big gap between rich and poor tends to reduce it too.

Jackie: So essentially, it looks like working too hard makes people feel low, and commuting – travelling to and from work. As does a big pay gap – a situation where there are very rich and very poor people living in the same region.

So these are things that, in theory, governments could improve, but what about us as individuals? Dr Nicks Baylis is co-Director the new Well-Being Institute at the University of Cambridge. He thinks that happiness has become an industry. Firms want us to think we can buy happiness – whether it's a tasty chocolate bar or self-help books. 'Self-help books'...books telling you how you can make yourself happier. Why does Dr Baylis think the commercialisation of happiness is a bad thing?

DR NICK BAYLIS

I think it's become an industry. There's 8 million self-help books claiming they can sell us 'feel-good'. I think that's a very unhelpful view of life because sometimes life feels bad and we have to know what to do with those bad feelings and if we're just trying to feel good the whole time and demonise the feeling bad, feeling scared or angry or ashamed or lonely, I think we're missing much of the richness of life. As for there being a formula for happy lives, I think that's going so far in the wrong direction.

Jackie: Dr Baylis rejects the idea of a formula – a set of rules – for how to be happy.

He thinks the 'feel-good' industry offers an unhelpful view of how we should be living. He thinks is more important for us to stop just expecting to be able to lead happy lives all the time. We must learn to accept that there are times when we don't feel so good. What were some of the adjectives he used?

DR NICK BAYLIS

...feeling bad, feeling scared or angry or ashamed or lonely...

Jackie: Feeling bad, scared, lonely, angry or ashamed. You feel ashamed when you think you have done something wrong, like upset someone. Dr Baylis thinks we shouldn't expect to be content all the time. We should learn how to accept and cope with negative feelings. As, he says, they are all part of the richness of life.

(Resource: bbclearningenglish.com)

Medical English vocabulary

English words and phrases connected with injury, illness and going to the doctor.

Boil = infected swelling with liquid inside it: “You’ll need to go to the doctor to have that boil lanced.” (lance – puncture and clean) Lump = swelling: “I have a strange lump on my arm. I wonder what caused it.”

Rash = allergic reaction which makes your skin go red: “When she used the soap her skin came out in a rash.”

Scab = dry skin that forms over a cut: “Don’t pick at your scab – you might make it bleed.” Spot = red mark on the skin (much smaller than a boil): “When he was a teenager he had a lot of spots.”

Swelling = an irritation or infection that makes the skin rise: “After the wasp stung her, she had a swelling on her leg for days.”

The following words can be used as nouns and verbs:

Bruise = when the skin goes blue and yellow: “She fell down the stairs and bruised her arm.” “He has a bruise just under his eye.”

Bump = when you hit yourself and get a slight swelling:

“Ow! I bumped my head on the desk!”

“It’s only a little bump – nothing serious.”

Cut = when something sharp breaks your skin and you bleed: “He cut himself badly on the bread knife.”

“Fortunately, nobody was seriously injured in the accident. There were only a few cuts and bruises.”

“She got a nasty cut on her hand while she was diving.”

Gash = deep cut: “He gashed his hand badly on a piece of broken glass.”

“That’s a nasty gash. You might need stitches.”

Graze = slight cut – not enough to bleed much: “When she was little, she was always grazing her knee.”

“I got a small graze on my hand when I fell onto some gravel.”

Itch = when a part of your body makes you want to scratch it: “My eyes are itching – this atmosphere is too smoky for me.”

“I’ve got a terrible itch where the mosquito bit me.”

Scratch = like a graze, but more painful: “The cat scratched me – it stings a little.”

“He was picking berries and got a couple of scratches from the thorns.” Sprain = twist a part of your body: “She sprained her ankle when she slipped on the ice.” “My ankle looks swollen, but it’s only a minor sprain.”

GOING TO THE DOCTOR

The first time you visit a new doctor, you should talk about your **medical history** – the illnesses you have had, any operations you have had and so on.

Your doctor might want to give you a check-up. A **check-up** will include **monitoring your blood pressure**, as high blood pressure is serious and can lead to **life-threatening** conditions. Your doctor will probably also **take your pulse** to check that your **heart rate** is normal.

A doctor uses a **stethoscope** to listen to your breathing – particularly if you have a **heart or chest infection**, or a condition such as **asthma**.

Of course, you can also visit the doctor for a huge range of other reasons. Children need to have their injections and if you are going abroad on holiday, you might also need to have injections against **infectious diseases**. In winter, you can also get a flu **vaccine** so that you won't get **the flu**.

If you need medication, a doctor will write you a **prescription**. You can get your **prescription filled** at a chemist.

For more serious medical conditions, you can get **a referral to a clinic** or a hospital. You might need **blood tests** done, or you might need an **X-ray**, or you might need to **see a specialist**.

Vocabulary

breathing – légzés

common – szokásos, gyakori

cure – gyógymód

generally – általában

guideline – irányvonal, útmutató

effective – hatékony

evidence – nyilvánvaló, egyértelmű

fever – láz

fluid – folyadék

necessarily – szükségszerűen

sticky – ragadós

substance – anyag, elegy

to believe – hinni

to feed – etetni

Speaking



(<https://alpenglowdentists.com/locations/dentist-sandy/>)

In this picture you can see a dental surgery with three people there. They are smiling and are looking happy. There are a dentist and his assistant and in the middle there is a patient, a young lady. They are taking a photo.

Your teeth are an important part of your smile, and they also help you chew foods like crunchy apples or yummy pizza. Brushing and flossing are important, but you also need to visit your dentist regularly to keep your teeth strong and healthy. The dentist is a doctor who is specially trained to care for teeth. When you visit for a checkup, your dentist will look at your teeth and gums to check for any problems. The dentist also wants to make sure your teeth are developing properly as you grow. It's important to visit your dentist every 6 months to make sure you're taking good care of your teeth and that your teeth and gums are healthy.

When you visit the dentist after your name is called in the waiting room, you'll go into an exam room and sit down in a big, comfortable chair. The chair will have a place to rest your head and lots of room for you to stretch out your legs. Next to the chair there may be a little sink with a cup that you can use to rinse out your mouth as your teeth are being cleaned. During the exam, your teeth will be cleaned, flossed, and checked.

VOCABULARY:

- assistant – asszisztens
- checkup – ellenőrzés
- dental surgery – fogorvosi rendelő
- floss – fogselyem
- healthy – egészséges
- gum – íny
- middle- közép
- part of – része valaminek
- smile – mosoly
- to care – gondozni, gondoskodni
- to rinse out – kiöblíteni
- to stretch out – kinyújtani
- to take a photo – fényképet készíteni
- to train – képezni
- waiting room – váró

to get/catch a cold – megfázni

to starve – éhezni

to transmit – átadni, megfertőzni

Unit 7. Speaking: Sports vocabulary

Word	Example sentence	Meaning
arena	The arena was full of excited spectators cheering on their team.	a level area for holding sports events, surrounded by seats for spectators
amateur	The Olympic Games were originally for amateur athletes only.	engaged in something, like playing sports, without payment; non-professional
athlete	Most professional athletes spend hours every day in training.	a person who trains for and competes in a sport
athletics	There are some very good runners on our athletics team.	'track and field' events of running, jumping, throwing, etc.
award	All the members of the winning team were awarded a gold medal.	to give someone something as a reward for high achievement
beat	Italy beat France to win the 2006 FIFA World Cup.	to defeat someone in a game or a competition
captain	The captain usually leads his or her team onto the field.	the leader of a team
catch	A wicketkeeper in cricket must be very good at catching the ball.	to grab and hold something that has been thrown
champion	The boxer Muhammad Ali was World Heavyweight Champion three times.	a top-rated, highly successful player
cheer on	The fans made a lot of noise cheering on their team.	to shout encouragement to a team or a player

coach	Players should carry out their coach's instructions during a game.	a person who trains and directs an athlete or a sports team
compete	Over 10,000 athletes will compete in the Olympic Games.	to take part in a contest or a competition
competition	The English Premiership League is one of the world's top football competitions.	an organized event in which people compete to win
competitor	Each competitor in a golf tournament must record his or her own score	a person who takes part in a competition or a sporting contest

contest	Do you know who won this year's figure skating contest?	a game or event in which people compete to win
court	The tennis courts at Wimbledon in London have a grass surface.	a quadrangular area on which ball games are played, such as tennis or basketball
course	A golf course usually has eighteen holes.	an area of land prepared for racing, golf, or other sports
cup	After they won the final game, the winners were awarded the Championship Cup.	a cup-shaped trophy, awarded as a prize in a contest
defeat	Our players were very happy after they defeated their opponents in the final game.	to win a victory over opponents in a game or contest; to beat
defend	The team attacked and scored two goals, then spent the rest of the game defending the lead.	to protect one's goal rather than attempt to score against one's opponents
draw	The score was 1-0, but the losing team got a late goal and the game ended in a 1-1 draw.	to finish a contest or game with an even score; tie
event	The 100 metres run is one of the most exciting events in athletics.	a particular contest in a sporting programme
fan	Sometimes the umpire of a tennis match has to tell noisy fans to be quiet.	a person who supports a particular sport, team or player
field	How many players are allowed on the field during a baseball game?	a piece of land marked out for a sports contest e.g. hockey field
final score	Today's basketball game was very close. The final score was 84 to 82.	the score at the end of a game

fitness	I exercise at the gym every day for fitness and good health.	the condition of being physically fit and healthy
goal	Jimmy got the ball, ran down the pitch, and then scored the best goal of the game.	an instance of scoring in a ball game by getting the ball into a target such as between goal-posts, through a hoop, or into a net.
gym / gymnasium	Our gym has a lot of new exercise equipment, including running machines and cycling machines.	a room or building equipped for physical exercise

half-time	The players went into the rooms at half-time and listened to their coach.	the interval between the first and second halves of a game
judge	In sports like diving and gymnastics, judges score each performance in a contest.	a person who rates the quality of a sporting performance, usually by awarding points
league	Nearly every town in the U.S. has teams in a local baseball league.	a group of sports clubs that play each other over a period for a championship
leisure	It's good for kids to spend some of their leisure time playing sports.	free time, or the use of free time for enjoyment
lob	Her lob flew high into the air and dropped into the back of the court, just inside the baseline.	a shot that is hit in a high arc, usually over the opponent's head
manager	Liverpool sacked their manager after they lost eight of their previous ten games.	the person in charge of a sports team
medal	Every athlete's dream is to win a gold medal at the Olympic Games.	a piece of engraved metal given to signify an achievement or an honor
object	The object of the game of football is to score more goals than the opponents.	the thing you want to get or achieve; what you aim to do
offside	Forwards have to learn how to avoid being caught in an offside position.	In an illegal position ahead of the ball (in football, rugby, hockey, etc.)

opponent	Roger Federer's opponent in the Wimbledon final was Rafael Nadal.	the person one competes against in a contest or a game; rival
pass	A defender tries to pass the ball to a forward in a good position to score.	to throw or kick the ball to another player on one's own team
penalty	The penalty for abusing a referee is usually a one-match suspension.	a punishment imposed on a player or team for breaking the rules of a sport
perform	All the athletes will do their best to perform well in the Olympic Games.	to carry out a practised activity, such a play a sport

performance	Venus Williams put in one the best performances of her life to win the tournament.	an instance of competing in a sports event in public
physique	Rugby players work hard in the gym to build up their physiques.	the form or shape of a person's body
pitch (1)	The fans cheered as the players ran onto the pitch.	a playing field (British)
pitch (2)	Our pitcher threw one of the best pitches of his life to win the game.	a throw of the ball, esp. in baseball and softball
player	How many players are on the court during a doubles match in tennis?	a person who plays a sport
practise (U.S. spelling; practice)	Professional golfers spend hours every day practising their shots.	to repeatedly do something in order to develop one's skill
professional	Tiger Woods has been a professional golfer since he was 20 years old.	a person whose paid occupation is playing a sport
record	Do you know who holds the world record for the men's 100 metres?	the best performance that has been officially measured and noted
referee	The referee saw a foul, blew his whistle and awarded a free kick.	a sports official with authority to make rulings during a contest
rules	In several sports there is an offside rule, and it's often difficult to explain.	the laws or regulations that govern how a game or sport is played

score	Do you know how to keep score in badminton?	the number of points a competitor or team earns during a game
serve	Serving the ball is one of the most important skills in sports like tennis.	to hit the ball to begin play (in tennis, table tennis, squash, volleyball, etc.)
shoot	In basketball, players try shoot from outside the 3-point line to score the extra points.	to kick, hit, or throw the ball in an attempt to score a goal (in soccer, hockey, basketball, etc.)
skill	Ken has gone to a boxing camp to improve his boxing skills.	the ability to do something well
spectator	Spectators can add a lot to sporting events by creating an exciting atmosphere.	a person who watches an event

sportsmanship	Good managers know how to teach their players sportsmanship.	an attitude of fairness, respect for opponents, and graciousness in winning or losing
stadium	The stadium was built for sports, but it's sometimes used for concerts as well.	a sports arena with tiered seating for spectators
strategy	One of the jobs of the manager or coach is to develop a strategy for winning each game.	a plan to achieve an objective
tackle	Rugby players have to learn how to tackle an opponent strongly but fairly.	to challenge an opponent who has the ball
tactics	Players use tactics such as attacking their opponent's weaknesses in order to win.	an action or strategy planned to achieve an objective
talent	Our daughter's basketball coach says she has a lot of natural talent for the game.	a natural aptitude or skill
teammate	The team wins because the players are always looking for their teammates.	a fellow member of a sports team
teamwork	The best teams spend a lot of time on the training ground working on teamwork.	the combined action of a group of people
tie	The score was very close throughout the game, and it ended in a tie with 89 points each.	a result in a game in which teams have the same final score; a draw

tournament	The four major tennis tournaments form what is known as the 'Grand Slam'.	a series of contests between a number of competitors, who compete for an overall prize
trainer	Some players are a bit lazy and need a strict trainer to make them work hard.	a person who helps athletes develop their skills and fitness
train	The hockey team trains every Tuesday and Thursday after school.	to teach a skill over time through instruction; to practise a skill
trophy	The players carried the trophy over their heads as they ran around the stadium.	a decorative object awarded as a prize in a contest or a tournament
umpire	In a game of cricket, there are two umpires on the field during play.	a sports official with authority to make rulings during a contest
victory	The players had worked very hard, and they deserved their victory.	the act of winning a game or contest
whistle	The referee blew his whistle twice to signal the end of the match.	a small instrument that makes a high-pitched noise when blown

UNIT 8.

BBC Learning English Weekender Polar Explorer

BBC Learning English

Weekender *Polar Explorer*



bbclearningenglish.com
© British Broadcasting Corporation 2005

Amber: Hello, I'm Amber, and you're listening to bbclearningenglish.com.
In Weekender today, we listen to an interview with explorer, Rosie Stancer.

In March, Rosie sets off on her latest expedition – walking solo (on her own) to the North Pole. Rosie has already trekked all the way to the South Pole, so if she succeeds in this latest challenge, she'll be the first woman to reach both Poles solo.

We catch up with Rosie on a training exercise in Canada, in Resolute Bay. She talks about the landscape she's preparing to encounter (including the polar bears!), what it's like training with the Army and what she thinks about when she's on a gruelling solo expedition.

First, though, Rosie describes what it is like in the Arctic (the northern polar region), where her next expedition will take place. As you listen, try to catch some of the different colours she mentions.

Rosie Stancer

‘It is quite ethereal. It is quite out of this world. It’s like being on a different planet, and it’s breathtakingly beautiful – on a good day! The Arctic, unlike the Antarctic, is actually very colourful – you’ve got very rich, spatial blues and aqua-marines, and then you’ve got all the startlingly different range of whites, and then the treacle black of the water.’

Polar Explorer

© BBC Learning English
Page 1 of 3

bbclearningenglish.com

Amber: It sounds stunning, doesn't it? Incredibly beautiful.
Rosie says there are 'rich', strong, blues – 'spatial blues' – blues that make you think of space, and 'aqua-marines' – blues that make you think of the colours of water. And there are all different kinds of white, and the water looks 'treacle black' – as black as treacle – treacle is a thick, brown, sticky, sweet liquid.
Next, Rosie talks about the polar bears she'll meet - and how she must 'respect' them because she's on their 'territory', their land. As you listen, try to catch how she describes herself while she's in the polar bears' environment.

Rosie Stancer

'Well, I have to respect them because, after all, I'm on their territory - I'm but a 'house guest', as it were! They are part of that environment. They are dangerous and they are very proficient stalkers. But, they're also ... they're curious.'

Amber: So she's a 'house-guest' of the polar bears when she's in the Arctic! And she has to be very careful because the polar bears are excellent hunters – they are 'very proficient stalkers'.
But for now, she's training hard with the Army. And what is that like? As you listen, try to catch the expression the Army uses to describe thinking problems out in extreme situations, when you are 'on your knees' with exhaustion.

Rosie Stancer

‘They’re excellent because they push you physically into this different zone. In other words, until you’re on your knees and then they make you think things out – ‘command tasking’ they call it. So in other words, you’re forced into situations where you’re knackered and you have to work things out for yourself, and this is precisely what I’m going to have to do when I’m out there on my own.’

Amber: ‘Command tasking’ – that’s what the Army call thinking through difficult problems in extreme situations. And Rosie uses a very informal word to

Polar Explorer

© BBC Learning English
Page 2 of 3

bbclearningenglish.com

describe exhaustion – to be ‘knackered’. Finally, she explains what she thinks about when she’s exhausted, desperate and lonely - how does she push herself on?

Rosie Stancer

‘Well, first of all, strangely, I’ve never felt lonely. Secondly, in a perverse sort of way, I actually enjoyed the psychological challenge. It’s the exploration – it’s not geographical exploration – it’s the exploration of one’s own boundaries – that you’re pushing yourself beyond, way beyond, your normal boundaries. And how are you finding it? What are you discovering? How far can you push?’

Amber: So Rosie enjoys exploring her own ‘boundaries’, her own limits as a person. And we wish her well on her solo expedition to the North Pole in March. Now here’s a list of the language we focussed on in the programme today.

solo

spatial

treacle

territory

a house-guest

proficient stalkers

command tasking

exploring your own boundaries

More entertainment news stories and language explanations next time at
bbclearningenglish.com

Polar Explorer

© BBC Learning English
Page 3 of 3

bbclearningenglish.com

Talking about the weather in English

It's true! British people often start a conversation with strangers and friends by talking about the weather. As weather is a neutral topic of conversation, it's usually safe to use it to strike up a conversation - at the bus stop, in a shop, or with a neighbour over the garden fence.

SOME EXAMPLES OF CONVERSATION STARTERS IN ENGLISH

"Lovely day, isn't it!"

"Bit nippy today."

"What strange weather we're having!"

"It doesn't look like it's going to stop raining today."

ATTITUDE TO WEATHER

Although British people like to complain about bad weather, they generally put a brave face on it.

If someone complains about too much rain, you might hear:

"Never mind - it's good for the garden."

If someone complains that it's too hot, you could hear:

"At least my tomatoes will be happy."

If the conversation has been about general bad weather, perhaps someone will say:

“Well, I’ve heard it’s worse in the west. They’ve had terrible flooding.”

PREDICTING THE WEATHER

We can make predictions about the weather, using a range of forms - not just the “will” or “going to” form:

“I think it’ll clear up later.”

“It’s going to rain by the looks of it.”

“We’re in for frost tonight.”

“They’re expecting snow in the north.”

“I hear that showers are coming our way.”

HUMAN ATTRIBUTES

We also attribute human features to the weather, almost as if the weather can decide what to do:

“The sun’s trying to come out.” “It’s been trying to rain all morning.” “It’s finally decided to rain.”

UNDERSTANDING THE FORECAST

Many British people are keen gardeners, and they keep a close eye on the weather forecast. Here are some of the weather features which can worry gardeners:

a hard frost

blizzard / galeforce conditions

hailstones

prolonged rain

blustery wind

a drought

Here are some English words for more temperate conditions which gardeners like:

mild weather

sunny spells

light drizzle

Weather words

temperature	hőmérséklet
degree	fok
bright	ragyogó
clear	tiszta
sunny	napos
mild	enyhe
lovely	szép
changeable	változékony
unsteady	változékony
unpleasant	kellemetlen
nasty	kellemetlen, rossz
awful	szörnyű
wretched	vacak
rainy	esős
windy	szeles
foggy	ködös
cloudy	felhős
misty	ködös
humid	nyirkos, párás
damp	nedves, nyirkos
brisk	friss
It's drizzling.	Szemerkél.
It's thundering and lightning.	Dörög és villámlik.
It's only a shower.	Csak egy zápor.
heavy rainstorm	nagy vihar esővel
to melt	elolvad
to awaken	felébred
leaf (Tsz. leaves)	levél (levelek)
to bloom	virágzik
to become yellow	megsárgul
to fall, fell, fallen	leesik
to harvest	betakarít
It is frosty.	Fagy.

slippery	csúszós
to be half frozen	félig meg van fagyva
to freeze, froze, frozen	megfagy
wet	nedves
to complain about	panaszodik vm-re
nippy weather	csípős idő
strange	furcsa különös
flood	áradás
blizzard	hóvihar
drought (Pronunciation!)	szárazság (kiejtést ellenőrizni!)
hailstone	jégeső
blustery wind	szélvihar

Dressing for the Occasion

When invited to a formal/business function there is nothing worse than discovering you've dressed incorrectly. If you receive an invitation that gives no indication of dress requirements, telephone your host and ask. The following will guide you on formal wear.

Semi-formal	
Men	Women
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Good quality dark suit. • White shirt, dark tie. • Dark socks and black shoes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ballet or cocktail-length dress.
Formal	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuxedo preferred - Dark suit acceptable in some situations. Ask your host. • Do not wear tails 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long dress
Black Tie	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuxedo (dinner jacket). • White dress shirt, cuff links and studs • Cummerbund (wide silk belt) • Black silk socks • Black patent leather shoes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long dress • Sheer stockings • Peau-de-soie pumps (i.e., heavy silk or silk-like material shoes) dyed to match dress or evening sandals
White Tie	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tails • White wing shirt, cuff links and studs • White bow tie • White cummerbund or white vest • White gloves (optional) • Black silk socks • Black patent leather shoes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long dress • Sheer hose • Peau-de-soie pumps dyed to match dress or evening sandals • Long, white gloves

Play it safe. For the men colourful ties and cummerbunds are not businesslike.

For the ladies low-cut, slinky, sexy dresses are not suitable for business functions.

Clothes

Men's Clothing



A black suit



A tie



A cotton shirt



A scarf



A black leather belt



A red dress



A skirt



A woman's leather b



A white blouse



A knitted scarf

Uni-sex clothing



A jacket



Socks



A raincoat



A sweater



A t-shirt



Blue jeans



A cap



Gloves



A sweatshirt) with a hood = a hoodie



Mittens



A jumper/ pullover



Shorts

Baby Clothes



romper suit(s) nappy (nappies)

Holiday/Leisure Clothes



swimming trunk(s) bikini(s) swimsuit(s) swimming costume(s) bathing costume(s)

Nightwear



nightdress(es) nightie(s) pyjama(s) dressing gown(s)

Ladies underwear (Lingerie)



bra(s) pant(s) knicker(s)



stocking(s) tight(s)

Uni-Sex



vest(s)

Footwear



shoe(s) sandal(s) boot(s)

Underwear

Men's



boxers



Y-fronts



wellington(s)



slipper(s)



sock(s)

Unit 8. Grammar: Environment and weather

A szenvedő (passive) szerkezet igen gyakori az angol nyelvben. A magyar nyelvben ma már csak a régies alakokban van jelen pl. minden kislány férjhez adatik stb. A szenvedő szerkezetben a cselekvő(k) személye háttérbe szorul, maga a cselekvés kerül előtérbe. A cselekvő(ke)t sok esetben nem nevezük meg, mivel vagy nem ismerjük, vagy nem tartjuk fontosnak őket megemlíteni.

A SZENVEDŐ SZERKEZET KÉPZÉSE:

létige (be) + az ige 3. alakja (past participle).

A létige mindig alkalmazkodik a megfelelő igeidőhöz, a (cselekvő) mondatban szereplő fő ige lesz az, amelyik mindig 3. alakba kerül.

Ezt a nyelvi jelenséget legkönnyebben úgy érthetjük meg, ha cselekvő szerkezetű mondatokat alakítunk át szenvedővé. A szabály az, hogy a cselekvő mondat tárgyából lesz a szenvedő mondat alanya (vagyis azzal kezdjük a mondatot).

PÉLDÁK:

People drink a lot of coffee in Hungary. Az emberek sok kávét isznak Magyarországon. Ez egy cselekvő mondat.

(A tárgy itt a kávé, tehát ez kerül a mondat elejére. Mivel ez a cselekvő mondat egyszerű jelen időben van, a **be**-ből **is** lesz (természetesen egyeztetünk a **coffee** szóval). Tehát eddig azt tudjuk, hogy:

A lot of coffee is

Most jön a **drink** harmadik alakja,

A lot of coffee is drunk in Hungary.

Ha például folyamatos jelen időben szeretnénk egy szenvedő szerkezetű mondatot létrehozni, akkor is arra kell figyelni, hogy az igeidő jegyei megmaradjanak. Jelen esetben ezek **is/are+ING**. Ez előbbi, ha összeeresztjük a szenvedő szerkezet **be+ az ige 3. alakjával** az lesz, hogy:

A **letter is** (ugye most kell jönnie az ing-es alaknak, amit a szenvedő szerkezetes be-hez kapcsolunk) **being written** (ahogy már mondtam a fő ige mindig 3. alakba kerül) **by John**. Ugye nem is olyan nehéz?

NÉZZÜNK PÉLDÁT A TÖBBI ELŐFORDULÓ IGEIDŐRE IS:

A **letter is written**. Egyszerű jelen idő.

A **letter is being written**. Folyamatos jelen idő.

A **letter has been written**. Befejezett jelen idő. (Present perfect: have/has +ige 3. alak, tehát has + most jön a harmadik alak, ami a szenvedő szerkezet be-je, ezért lesz been).

A **letter was written**. Egyszerű múlt.

A **letter was being written**. Folyamatos múlt.

A **letter had been written**. Befejezett múlt.

A **letter will be written**. Jövő idő. (a will után csak oda kell helyoznünk a szenvedő szerkezet be+ ige harmadik alakját, ugyanez igaz a segédigékre is pl. can be seen, should be drunk, must be seen stb.)

A **letter will be being written**. Folyamatos jövő idő. (Na, ez az, amit nem sokszor láthatsz leírva!)

A **letter will have been written**. Befejezett jövő idő. A cselekvő megnevezése a by + főnévvel

A cselekvő személyének megnevezésére szenvedő szerkezetben a mondat végén van lehetőség a **by + főnév kifejezéssel**. Ez azonban csak akkor indokolt, ha konkrét személy(ek)ről van szó.

Nem szükséges a mondat végén: *They were invited* (by somebody).

Indokolt a mondat végén: *They were invited by Jenny/by their neighbour, stb.*

A *by* + tulajdonnév gyakran fordul elő jelentős emberi teljesítményekről, műalkotásokról szóló mondatok végén.

The American Tragedy was written by Theodor Dreiser. Az Amerikai tragédiát Theodor Dreiser írta.

'A place in the sun' was directed by Stevens. Az "Egy hely a napban" című filmet Stevens rendezte.

'The four seasons' was composed by Vivaldi. A Négy évszakot Vivaldi szerzte.

MÉG EGY ÉRDEKESÉG:

Vannak olyan cselekvő mondatok, amelyek kétféleképpen alakíthatók át szenvedő szerkezeté. Ezekben az angol nyelvtan szerint 2 tárgy létezik; közvetlen és közvetett tárgy. Ha olyan típusú mondatot szeretnél szenvedő szerkezetbe tenni, amelyben jelen van a "valakinek valamit", akkor azt kétféleképpen teheted meg. A mondat alanya lehet a cselekvő mondat 'valakije' és a 'valamije' is. Ilyen igék még pl. a **promise** (megígér valakinek valamit), **give** (ad valakinek valamit) stb.

They gave him money. (Neki adtak pénzt.)

Money was given to him. vagy *He was given money.*

Climate Change: Basic Information

CLIMATE CHANGE IS HAPPENING



Our Earth is warming.

Earth's average temperature has risen by 1.4°F over the past century, and is projected to rise another 2 to 11.5°F over the next hundred years. Small changes in the average temperature of the planet can translate to large and potentially dangerous shifts in climate and weather.

The evidence is clear.

Rising global temperatures have been accompanied by changes in weather and climate. Many places have seen changes in rainfall, resulting in more floods, droughts, or intense rain, as well as more frequent and severe heat waves. The planet's oceans and glaciers have also experienced some big changes - oceans are warming and becoming more acidic, ice caps are melting, and sea levels are rising. As these and other changes become more pronounced in the coming decades, they will likely present challenges to our society and our environment.

Learn more about the signs of climate change in the United States.

HUMANS ARE LARGELY RESPONSIBLE FOR RECENT CLIMATE CHANGE



Over the past century, human activities have released large amounts of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. The majority of greenhouse gases come from burning fossil fuels to produce energy, although deforestation, industrial processes, and some agricultural practices also emit gases into the atmosphere. Greenhouse gases act like a blanket around Earth, trapping energy in the atmosphere and causing it to warm. This phenomenon is called the greenhouse effect and is natural and necessary to support life on Earth. However, the buildup of greenhouse gases can change Earth's climate and result in dangerous effects to human health and welfare and to ecosystems.

The choices we make today will affect the amount of greenhouse gases we put in the atmosphere in the near future and for years to come.

Learn more about the causes of climate change.

Climate change affects everyone

Our lives are connected to the climate.

Human societies have adapted to the relatively stable climate we have enjoyed since the last ice age which ended several thousand years ago. A warming climate will bring changes that can affect our water supplies, agriculture, power and transportation systems, the natural environment, and even our own health and safety.

Some changes to the climate are unavoidable.

Carbon dioxide can stay in the atmosphere for nearly a century, so Earth will continue to warm in the coming decades. The warmer it gets, the greater the risk for more severe changes to the climate and Earth's system. Although it's difficult to predict the exact impacts of climate change, what's clear is that the climate we are accustomed to is no longer a reliable guide for what to expect in the future.

We can reduce the risks we will face from climate change. By making choices that reduce greenhouse gas pollution, and preparing for the changes that are already underway, we can reduce risks from climate change. Our decisions today will shape the world our children and grandchildren will live in.

Learn more about the impacts of climate change and adapting to change.

We can make a difference



You can take action.

You can take steps at home, on the road, and in your office to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and the risks associated with climate change. Many of these steps can save you money; some, such as walking or biking to work can even improve your health! You can also get involved on a local or state level to support energy efficiency, clean energy programs, or other climate programs. Learn more about what you can do.

Calculate your carbon footprint and find ways to reduce your emissions through simple everyday actions.

EPA and other federal agencies are taking action.

EPA is working to protect the health and welfare of Americans through common sense measures to reduce greenhouse gas pollution and to help communities prepare for climate change.

Unit 8. Reading: Vocabulary Weather

temperature	hőmérséklet
degree	fok
bright	ragyogó
clear	tiszta
sunny	napos
mild	enyhe
lovely	szép
changeable	változékony
unsteady	változékony
unpleasant	kellemetlen
nasty	kellemetlen, rossz
awful	szörnyű
wretched	vacak
rainy	esős
windy	szeles
foggy	ködös
cloudy	felhős
misty	ködös
humid	nyirkos, párás
damp	nedves, nyirkos
brisk	friss
It's drizzling.	Szemerkél.
It's thundering and lightning.	Dörög és villámlik.
It's only a shower.	Csak egy zápor.
heavy rainstorm	nagy vihar esővel
to melt	elolvad
to awaken	felébred
leaf (Tsz. leaves)	levél (levelek)
to bloom	virágzik
to become yellow	megsárgul

to fall, fell, fallen	leesik
to harvest	betakarít
It is frosty.	Fagy.
slippery	csúszós
to be half frozen	félíg meg van fagyva
to freeze, froze, frozen	megfagy
wet	nedves
to complain about	panaszkodik vm-re
nippy weather	csípős idő
strange	furcsa különös
flood	áradás
blizzard	hóvihar
drought	szárazság
hailstone	jégeső
blustery wind	szélvihar

Unit 8. Reading: Vocabulary Weather

Word <i>Part of speech</i>	Meaning	Example Sentence
airconditioner/ airconditioning <i>noun</i>	an appliance that cools down the air in a home or building	The airconditioner keeps the office nice and comfortable even when it's very hot outside.
avalanche <i>noun</i>	a dangerous slide of snow down a mountain	The skiers were warned about a possible avalanche .
below freezing <i>preposition/adjective</i>	temperature less than 0 degrees Celsius/(32F)	It's supposed to go below freezing before the weekend.
blizzard <i>noun</i>	a storm with lots of snow and wind	The airplane couldn't takeoff because of the blizzard .
boiling hot <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression for describing a very hot day	It was boiling hot , so we all jumped into the lake.
breeze <i>noun</i>	light wind	Don't bother with a hat. There is always a breeze near the ocean.
Celsius <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (0 degrees is freezing/100 is boiling)	In the summer, the average temperature here is 20 degrees Celsius .

chilly <i>adjective</i>	cold	It's a bit chilly today, so I think you should wear a coat.
clear <i>adjective</i>	when the sky is blue because no clouds are blocking the sun	On a clear night you can see a lot of stars.
cloud/cloudy <i>noun/adjective</i>	water in the sky that appears as a white or grey mass	It may look cloudy in the morning, but the sun always comes out by afternoon.

cold spell <i>adjective + noun</i>	a period of colder than average weather	They're calling for a cold spell , so we put off our camping trip.
cool <i>adjective</i>	temperature in between warm and cold	The days were boiling hot, but the nights were cool and comfortable for sleeping.
degrees <i>noun</i>	measurement for temperature	I don't feel the heat until it's about forty degrees Celsius outside.
drizzling <i>continuous verb</i>	raining slightly	I think I'll take the dog for a walk. It's only drizzling now.
drought <i>noun</i>	a long period with no rainfall	Forest fires are a serious danger during a drought .
Fahrenheit <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (32 degrees is freezing/212 is boiling)	It was 100 degrees Fahrenheit when we got to San Francisco.
flood <i>noun</i>	overflow of rain water	The flood was so bad, our basement was full of water.
flurries <i>noun</i>	very light snowfall	There are a few flurries but the snow isn't sticking to the roads.

fog/foggy <i>noun/adjective</i>	thick water vapor that blocks one's vision	We couldn't see the bridge because there was too much fog .
forecast <i>noun/verb</i>	the expected weather for the future	According to the 5 day forecast , it's going to rain on our wedding day.
freezing cold <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression used to describe a very cold day	It was a freezing cold day for the Santa Claus parade.
frost <i>noun</i>	ice crystals on a frozen surface	Some flowers are so strong they can withstand frost .
frostbite <i>noun</i>	a skin condition caused by over exposure to the cold (typically reddish skin with white spots)	I lost my hat while I was skiing, and I ended up with frostbite on my ears.

hail <i>noun</i>	small pieces of ice that fall during a storm	There was so much hail that some of the trailer homes were destroyed.
heat stroke <i>noun</i>	a flu-like condition one can acquire after spending too long in the sun	Bring lots of water and wear a hat to avoid heat stroke in this weather.
heat-wave <i>noun</i>	extremely hot weather that is much higher than average--usually lasts a short time	During the heat-wave we cooled our beds down with ice packs.
humid/humidity <i>adjective/noun</i>	moisture in the air	It feels a lot hotter than it actually is because of the humidity .
hurricane <i>noun</i>	a tropical storm with very strong wind and rain	Half of the buildings on the island were flattened by the hurricane .
icy <i>adjective</i>	slippery because of ice	The roads are icy so please avoid driving down any hills.
lightning <i>noun</i>	electrical discharge and flash between a cloud and the ground	The outdoor pool always closes when the lifeguards think lightning is coming.
mild <i>adjective</i>	temperature that is warmer than average(in a cold season)	It's quite mild out so I didn't bother with a hat or mittens.

meteorologist <i>noun</i>	a person who studies weather patterns	The meteorologist predicted that the cold spell would be over by now.
minus/negative <i>adjective</i>	indicates that a temperature is below zero	It was minus twenty degrees at the top of the skil hill.
overcast <i>adjective</i>	no sun is visible	The sky is overcast this morning, but the sun is supposed to come out by late afternoon.
partly cloudy <i>adverb + adjective</i>	term often used in a weather forecast to indicate that the skies are sunny and cloudy at the same time	Tomorrow's forecast is partly cloudy with clear skies by nightfall.
precipitation	rain or snow that falls on an area	There is very little

<i>noun</i>		precipitation in the desert.
puddle <i>noun</i>	collection of rain water	Children love to splash in puddles when they are wearing rubber boots.
rain/raining/ rainy <i>noun/continuous verb/adjective</i>	water that falls to earth	My hair is all wet and messy from the rain .
raindrop <i>noun</i>	a single measurement of rain	I love catching raindrops on my tongue.
rainbow <i>noun</i>	a band of colours found in the sky after a rainfall	According to legend you can find a pot of gold at the end of a rainbow .
raining cats and dogs <i>idiom</i>	raining heavily	They cancelled the football game because it was raining cats and dogs .
scorching/a scorcher <i>adjective/noun</i>	extremely hot temperature/a very hot day	It was a scorcher , so the whole family slept in the cool basement.
season <i>noun</i>	time of year characterized by certain weather Winter, Spring, Summer, Fall (or Autumn)	My favorite season is Fall, because I love to watch the leaves changing colours.

shower <i>noun</i>	quick/light rainstorm	They've been calling for showers all week, but so far it's been dry.
sleet(similar to hail) <i>noun</i>	rain that freezes as it falls	All-weather-tires are best if you have to drive in sleet .
slush/slushy <i>noun/adjective</i>	snow on the ground that has been rained on	The snow turned to slush as soon as it started to rain.
smog <i>noun</i>	heavy, dark cloud cover caused by pollution	You really notice the smog downtown in this type of humidity.
snow/snowy/snowing <i>noun/adjective/</i>	frozen water that warms slightly as it falls to earth	It is already snowing up in the mountains, so the ski

<i>continuous verb</i>		season should be great this year.
snowstorm <i>noun</i>	large amounts of wind and snow	All of the schools were closed because of the snowstorm .
sun/sunshine/ sunny <i>noun noun adjective</i>	the gassy star that warms the earth	We hope to have sunshine on the day of the beach picnic.
sunburn <i>noun</i>	painful red/pink skin caused by being in the sun too long	The bald man got a sunburn on his head.
sunglasses/shades <i>noun</i>	dark eyewear that protects you from the sun	I forgot my shades and I was driving right into the sun.
suntan/tanned <i>noun (also verb)/ adjective (also verb)</i>	brown/golden skin caused by long periods of sun exposure	I got a suntan on the cruise, but it has already faded away.
sunscreen/suntan lotion <i>noun</i>	cream that protects your skin from sun damage	Don't forget to reapply your sunscreen when you get out of the lake.
temperature <i>noun</i>	how warm or cold the air is	Can you check the temperature before we get dressed for our walk?

thermometer <i>noun</i> U	instrument for measuring the temperature of the air	When I checked the temperature this morning, the thermometer said it was already thirty degrees Celsius.
thunder/thunderstorm <i>noun</i>	thunder is a loud noise after lightning, caused by rapid expansion of air superheated by the lightning	Let's close all of the windows. It looks like a thunderstorm is coming.
tornado/cyclon	violently spinning windstorm	The tornado picked up everything in its path, including animals and cars.
umbrella <i>noun</i>	held over one's head and body for rain protection	I always keep an umbrella in my car in case of rain.
UV (ultra violet) rays	the damaging rays from the sun	Ultra violet rays can
<i>noun</i>		cause skin cancer if you don't wear sunscreen.
wind/windy <i>noun/adjective</i>	blowing air outside	It's too windy to play golf today.
wind chill factor <i>noun</i>	when the wind makes the air feel colder than the actual temperature	It's minus two, but with the wind chill factor it's minus fifteen.

UNIT 9.

Unit 9. Reading: Buying a house

English people often talk about their homes: their mortgages, the interest rates, and rising property prices. Here's a guide to some of the English words and phrases you might come across.

YOUR DREAM HOME

It's a good idea in the UK to **arrange a mortgage** with a bank before you start looking. This is when the bank tells you how much money they will lend you so you have a good idea of how much you can afford.

The next step is to go to **an estate agent** (= a company which represents buyers and sellers of properties) to see what sort of properties they have available in your budget range and in your area. If you see something you like, the estate agent will arrange for you to **view the property**, so that you can see the house or flat for yourself.

If you see something that takes your eye, you **put in an offer**. The **vendor** (seller) can accept or decline this offer, and if the vendor accepts it, you can move forward with the sale. However, as you don't pay any money at this point, the offer isn't **legally binding**, and in theory, you can **pull out** of the offer at any time that you like.

Your next step will probably be to get a **structural survey** done. A **qualified surveyor** will inspect the house and write a report that illustrates any structural problems, like **damp** or **drainage** problems.

If you still want to go ahead with the sale, you need to appoint a **solicitor** (a lawyer) to do the **conveyancing** (= the legal paperwork.) If you already own a house, you might also be busy trying to sell it. Many house owners prefer to sell to **first time buyers** (those people who don't already own a home), as they are not in **a chain** (=waiting for other people to buy their house before they can buy their next house).

Finally, once the **contracts** are signed and **exchanged**, you **complete** on your house. You get the keys and you can move in whenever you want. Then you might want to **throw a house-warming party**. Congratulations!

Unit 9. Reading: English bedroom

English words connected with the bedroom.

Bedrooms come in all shapes and sizes. You can find bedrooms which contain just a **single bed**, or those which have a **double bed** (bed which is big enough for two people), or even **twin beds** (two single beds side by side). Some people choose to sleep in a **futon** (a Japanese bed which is low on the ground) and some people who like luxury might have a **four-poster** (a bed which has four posts - one in each corner - and from which you can hang curtains or mosquito nets). When children share a bedroom, they might sleep in **bunk beds**, where there is one bed on top of the other. The upper bunk is reached by a small ladder.

On your bed, you'll have at least one **sheet** (normally in cotton, but in a variety of colours or patterns), and you normally lie on top of this sheet. Some people also have a sheet over them, with **blankets** (made from wool) to keep them warm. Alternatively, you can replace the top sheet and blankets with a **duvet** (a warm, but lightweight quilt). You're likely to sleep with your head on a **pillow**, which is often filled with feathers. Pillows are normally put inside a cotton **pillow case**, and the duvet is also put inside a cotton **duvet cover**. If it gets really cold, you can also have a quilt or **eiderdown** over your blankets. Some people also have an **electric blanket** that they use to warm up the bed. In England, many people use a **hot water bottle** (a flat rubber bag that you fill with hot water then seal) to put into the bed to warm it up.

As well as a bed, you're likely to have other furniture in your bedroom, such as a **chest of drawers** (a piece of furniture with several drawers to put clothes in); a **wardrobe**, which is a piece of furniture with doors where you can hang shirts, trousers, or skirts and dresses on **clothes hangers**; and a **bedside table**, which is a small table next to the bed. On the bedside table, you might have a **bedside light** and an **alarm clock**. Some people also have a **dressing table**, which is a small table that you sit in front of, with a **mirror** to see your reflection in when you do your hair or make-up, and a couple of drawers. Other people might have their mirror on their chest of drawers, as well a hair **brush** and even a **clothes brush** (a special brush that you use to clean jackets and shirts).

Unit 9. Reading: Kitchen

Some people have a **fitted kitchen**, where all the kitchen **units** have been bought together, and they are assembled according to a plan. Other people have a kitchen where the units are **free-standing**: not necessarily bought together at one time.

In a kitchen you are likely to find **cupboards** (or **cabinets**), either at **floor level**, or at **eye level**. In the eye level cupboards you will probably find **dry goods** (such as flour, sugar, rice, pasta, spices) and maybe glasses and **crockery** (plates, bowls etc). In the floor level cupboards you might find pots and pans: saucepans for cooking pasta etc; **frying pans** for frying food; **baking tins** and **roasting tins** for cooking food in the oven; and serving dishes made from glass or china. You could also find other kitchen **implements** such as a **blender** (= food processor) and **kitchen scales** (for measuring and weighing food). Often the top part of a floor level cupboard has a **drawer**, where various items are kept, such as cutlery (knives, forks and spoons); **aluminium foil** (metal paper), **cling film** (thin plastic wrap), **freezer bags**, and other kitchen items such as a **bread knife**, **tin opener**, **corkscrew** (to open bottles of wine), potato peeler (to take the skin off potatoes), a **rolling pin** (to roll out pastry) and so on.

On the top of the floor level cupboards you often find a **worktop** or **work surface**, where you can prepare food. These surfaces are sometimes made of marble, or hard wood, and they can be easily cleaned. Some people keep a **toaster** or **microwave** on the work surfaces, along with things they need frequently, such as oil, salt, or various sauces.

Most kitchens also contain a **cooker** with an **oven** and four **rings**, (although some modern cookers are **split level**, where the oven is separate from the rings), a **fridge-freezer**, and perhaps a **dishwasher** or even a **washing machine**. You'll probably find a kitchen **sink**, where you wash the plates and dishes, and larger kitchens also contain a kitchen table and chairs, so you can eat in the same room

Speaking: Meals and services



(source: <http://easvenglishsos.blogspot.hu>)

Choose the correct answer. There is only one possibility.

Take-away food

More and more people buy food from a 'take-away' and eat it at home. This is quicker than cooking a meal and cheaper than eating in a restaurant. The most common take-away foods in Britain are fish and chips, hamburgers, and Chinese foods.

This fish is fried in oil. The chips are cooked in oil, too. The fish frier supplies his customers with a ready-cooked meal at midday and in the evening. They can either take it home wrapped in paper, or eat it in the shop. He may also serve fried sausages with chips and hot meat pies - a pie is made of meat enclosed in pastry.

Coffee bars

Coffee bars, Wimpy bars, tea shops, snack bars and cafeterias of department stores are popular meeting places for young people. It is possible to have a snack or even to dance in some bars, but non-alcoholic drinks are sold.

Restaurants

Inexpensive restaurants known as 'Fish and Chip Shops' are something of a national institution in the U.K. remaining open until about 11p.m., they are ideal for motorists on a long journey. Foreign visitors to the U.K. are often surprised to see the large number of Chinese restaurants - at least one in every town. These restaurants offer good food at reasonable prices and are very popular.

Self-service restaurants

They offer a big choice of dishes on the counters, you just have to take a tray with cutlery, glasses and serviettes. You can pay at the cash-desk. You need to clear your table.

Reading Services

Read the four texts about going to restaurants. Then do the reading comprehension task. Good luck!

1. The last time I went to a restaurant was about 2 months ago. My wife and I wanted to celebrate our wedding anniversary with a good meal so we went to an expensive Italian restaurant in downtown Lisbon. We both had pasta to start and for the main course my wife ordered a steak and I chose fish. For dessert we both ate chocolate cake topped with fresh cream. Delicious!

2. I went to a restaurant yesterday evening with my sister's children. It wasn't very expensive and the menu was very limited. We all had a burger and French fries, and drank cola. It wasn't very good.

3. My boyfriend loves spicy food so this restaurant was perfect. The waiters were all really friendly and polite, and they played traditional sitar music which was very relaxing. The menu offered vegetarian dishes as well as meat dishes served with rice and a sauce - it depended on how hot you wanted it! I chose a mild beef curry but my boyfriend had a lamb 'vindaloo' - he also drank 2 liters of water!!

4. My class at the university went there last weekend. It's a very popular type of restaurant in my country. It generally offers one type of food (a kind of bread with cheese and tomato sauce) which you then choose what ingredients to add on top of it. I asked for olives and mushrooms on mine and my classmates each had something different so we could taste a piece of each person's meal.

(source: <http://www.esl-lounge.com>)

Unit 9. Reading: Property & Real-Estate

1 apartment ^{US}	<i>n.</i> a room or group of rooms to live in, usually on one floor; flat ^{UK}
2 development	<i>n.</i> a number of buildings on a large piece of land - real-estate developer <i>n.</i>
3 elevator ^{US}	<i>n.</i> a compartment for moving people from floor to floor in a building; lift ^{UK}
4 en suite	<i>adv.</i> forming one unit [eg: bedroom with bathroom en suite] - <i>also adj.</i>
5 estate agent ^{US}	<i>n.</i> a person whose business is to sell or let land or property on behalf of others
6 first floor ^{US}	<i>n.</i> storey of a building at the same level as the street or ground; ground floor ^{UK}
7 flat ^{UK}	<i>n.</i> a room or group of rooms to live in, usually on one floor; apartment ^{US}
8 for sale	offered for purchase; to be sold; available to be bought
9 freehold	<i>n.</i> the holding of land or property for an unlimited period of time - <i>also adj.</i>
10 furnished	<i>adj.</i> [of a house, apartment etc] let with furniture - to furnish v.
11 garden	<i>n.</i> space or ground surrounding a building, often with flowers, trees etc; yard ^{US}
12 ground floor ^{UK}	<i>n.</i> storey of a building at the same level as the street or ground; first floor ^{US}
13 landlord	<i>n.</i> a person who owns an apartment, house, office etc and lets it to a tenant
14 leasehold	<i>n.</i> the holding of land or property for a predetermined period of time - <i>also adj.</i>
15 let	<i>v.</i> [let, let] to give the use of a building etc in return for periodic payments or rent
16 lift ^{UK}	<i>n.</i> a compartment for moving people from floor to floor in a building; elevator ^{US}
17 rent	<i>v.</i> to make periodic payments (monthly etc) for the use of a building etc - <i>also n.</i>
18 storey ^{UK}	<i>n.</i> one of the levels of a building; floor; story ^{US}
19 tenant	<i>n.</i> a person who rents an apartment, house, office etc from a landlord
20 yard ^{US}	<i>n.</i> space or ground surrounding a building; garden

Housing Words

housing estate	lakótelep
house with a garden	kertesház
two-room flat	kétszobás lakás
block of flats	tömbház
detached house	különálló kétszintes ház
freehold flat	öröklakás
study	dolgozó szoba
pantry	kamra
square metre	négyzetméter
living room	nappali
bedroom	háló
kitchen	konyha
dining room	étkező
bathroom	fürdőszoba
desk	íróasztal
standard lamp	állólámpa
dining table	étkezőasztal
dresser	tálaló
sink	mosogató
gas/electric cooker	gáz/villany tűzhely
to face	néz valahová
curtain	függöny
carpet	szőnyeg
rug	kis szőnyeg
furniture (nincs többeszám!)	bútor
settee	kanapé
bath-tub	fürdőkád
hot and cold running water	hideg, meleg folyóvíz
washbasin	mosdó
mirror	tükör
toothpaste	fogkrém
toothbrush	fogkefe
body lotion	testápoló
towel rack	törölközőtartó
attic	padlászsoba
store-room	raktár
cellar	pince

ornament	díszítés
ceramics	kerámia
china	porcelán
candlestick	gyertyatartó
ashtray	hamutálca
Hi-Fi tower	hi-fi torony
floor heating	padlófűtés
electric heater	villanykályha
central heating	központi fűtés
fireplace	kandalló
tile	csempe, járólap
lino	műpadló
floor board	padló
wall-to-wall carpet	padlószőnyeg
terraced house	sorház
semi-detached house	társasház
bungalow	különálló egyszintes ház
closet	szekrény
blanket	pokróc
pillow	párna
sheet	lepedő
plunger	pumpa
faucet/tap	csap

Unit 9. Reading Comprehension Task: Housing

Search for the perfect place



How does it work?

First, you need to search for the city where you want to stay. You will see a map of the city and a list of available accommodations. If there are too many results, make sure to narrow down your search results by applying some of our filters – in this way you will only get the results that matter to you.

What filters can I apply?

Housing Anywhere offers multiple ways to filter your search results. You can filter on your move in and move out date to make sure the rooms you're looking at are available. Next to that you can filter on room type (Apartment / Studio / Room) and on price. Finally, you can filter your results by zooming in on a specific part of the map: we will only show the rooms that are available on the visible part of the map.

What should I include in my message?

You would like to get to know the person you're renting from, and the advertiser wants to get to know you too. Introduce yourself by telling a bit about yourself: what age are you, where are you from, why are you looking for a place to stay?

To how many advertisers should I reach out?

In order to come to a booking you have to agree about the booking period, the rent and there should be a match with the advertiser. For this reason, we advise to reach out to at least 5 rooms at the same time - this way you will make sure to get that perfect place to stay.

(<http://www.independent.co.uk>, resource: www.housinganywhere.com))

Unit 9. Speaking: Housing

Try to talk about this picture for about 2-3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



PROMPTS:

- shelter
- poor people
- accomodation
- lack of security

- communities
- developing countries
- homelessness
- electricity and gas supply
- wiring
- potable water
- pipeline
- region
- crucial
- consequently
- reconstruction
- to be bred
- nor for all the tea in China (a világ minden kincséért sem)
- peace of living
- to et stuck
- mud
- decline

(<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Housing>)

Here are some useful phrases to make and accept invitations in English.

Inviting

Invitations are often structured into three parts: asking the person if they're free, saying what the event is, then inviting the person to attend.

For example:

“What are you doing next Saturday? We're having some people over for a meal. Would you like to come?”

“Have you got anything on for this evening? A couple of us are going to the pub after work if you'd like to come.” (to have something on = to have an arrangement)

OTHER WAYS TO MAKE AN INVITATION:

“Are you free next Thursday?”

“Are you doing anything next weekend?”

“Would you be interested in coming to the cinema with me tonight?”

“How do you fancy going out for a meal at the weekend?”

“Do you fancy coming to the cinema with us on Tuesday?”

“Would you like to join Sally and I for a bité to eat after work?”

ACCEPTING

If your invitation starts with a phrase like:

“Would you like to..”

You can reply:

“I’d love to, thanks.”

“That’s very kind of you, thanks.”

“That sounds lovely, thanks.”

If the invitation begins:

D- you fancy coming to the cinema tonight?

You can accept with:

“What a great idea, thanks.”

“Sure! What’s on?”

“Yeah, why not!” (this can sound a little unenthusiastic, so use it with good friends.)

Declining

“Would you like to come over for dinner on Saturday?”

“That’s very kind of you, but actually I’m doing something else on Saturday.”

“Well, I’d love to, but I’m already going out to the cinema.”

“I’m really sorry, but I’ve got something else on.”

“I really don’t think I can - I’ve planned to go away that weekend.”

Speaking Tip

It’s important to be polite when you decline an invitation. We normally give a reason why we can’t do something and say we’re sorry that we can’t accept the invitation.

Unit 9. Speaking: Housing



(<http://www.independent.co.uk>)

VOCABULARY:

according to – valami szerint

affection – ragaszkodás,

szerelem comfort – kényelem

hall – előtér. előszoba

important – fontos

middle – közép

paddy field – rizsföld

proud - büszke

security – biztonság

to belong to – tartozni valamihez

to consider – fontolóra venni,

elgondolkodni valamin

to offer- felajánlani

to share – osztozni, osztani

to spend - eltölteni

UNIT 10.

Unit 10. Speaking: Crime and Punishment

Try to talk about this picture about 2-3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



PROMPTS:

- addiction / dependence
- to determine
- effects
- to lose coordination and control

- overdose
- to cause
- for most people
- common problem amongst youngsters
- leading cause of death
- under the influence of...
- statistics
- teenage drinking and driving
- fatal
- brain development

(https://www.123rf.com/photo_15915182_businessman-doing-mixed-use-of-drugs-and-alcohol.html)

Unit 10. Grammar: Crime and punishment

Ha szép idő lesz, kirándulni fogunk. A második szint a magyar -na, -ne, -ná, -nés mondatoknak felel meg pl. *Ha szép idő lenne, kirándulnánk.* A harmadik szint pedig mindez a múltban: *Ha szép idő lett volna, kirándultunk volna.* Szóval ha ilyen típusú feltételes mondatokat szeretnénk létrehozni, csak azt kell megjegyeznünk, milyen szerkezet társul ezekhez. Ja, az is fontos, hogy a különféle tagmondatokat értelemszerűen keverhetjük is: *Ha nem ittál volna annyit (3. szint), most nem lennél rosszul (második szint).* Nézzük most mindezt részletesen.

I. A FELTÉTELES MÓD ELSŐ ALAPESETE

A feltételes mód első alapesete a következő két tagmondatból áll össze:

1. if + egyszerű jelen idő és
2. will / won't + infinitive (to nélküli főnévi igenév).

Az összetett mondaton belül a két tagmondat sorrendje tetszőleges. Csupán egy helyesírási különbségre kell ügyelni. Ha az if-es tagmondat az első, akkor vesszőt teszünk utána, de fordított esetben nincs írásjel az if előtt.

A feltételes módnak ez a változata a jövőre vonatkozik. Azt fejezi ki, hogy milyen feltételnek kell ahhoz teljesülnie, hogy valamilyen esemény bekövetkezzen. Az if kezdetű mellékmondat közli a feltételt, a főmondat tartalmazza a várható következményt.

Példák:

If I make a promise, I will keep it. Ha megígértem, be is tartom.

If anyone corrects your pronunciation, you have to thank him for it. Ha bárki kijavítja a kiejtésedet, meg kell köszönnöd neki azt.

I'll come here tomorrow unless it rains. El fogok jönni holnap, hacsak nem esik az eső.

If I am ill, my mum calls a doctor. Ha beteg vagyok, anya orvost hív.

I'll buy this dress if I have more money. Megveszem ezt a ruhát, ha több pénzem lesz.

Figyelem!

Ügyeljünk arra, hogy az if kezdetű mellékmondatban nehogyan jövő idejű igealakot szerepeltessünk (tehát 'if' után nem lehet 'will') !

A FELTÉTELES MÓD MÁSODIK ALAPESETE

A feltételes mód második alapesete a következő két tagmondatból tevődik össze:

1. a főmondat feltételes jelen időben (present conditional) = should/would + ige 1. alakja,
2. a mellékmondat (az if-es tagmondat) múlt időben (simple past) van.

Példák:

If I were a rich man, I wouldn't work. Ha gazdag lennék, nem dolgoznék.

If he could not come, who would do the work. Ha nem tudna jönni, ki végezné el a munkát.

I would buy this dress if I had more money. Megvenném ezt az autót, ha több pénzem lenne.

If I could sing, I'd be happy. Boldog lennék, ha tudnék énekelni.

Megjegyzés1: a mellékmondat múlt idejű létigéje egyes szám első személyben, bizonyos megszilárdult kifejezésekben was helyett were.

A FELTÉTELES MÓD HARMADIK ALAPESETE

Ez a feltételes múlt: a feltétel is, és a következmény is lehetetlen (... volna, ... volna).

1. a főmondat feltételes múlt időben (past conditional) van= should/would + have + ige 3. alakja,
2. a mellékmondat (az if-es tagmondat) régmúltban (past perfect) van= had + ige
3. alakja.

Példák:

If he had been ill, he would have called the doctor. Ha beteg lett volna, orvost hívott volna.

If you had been able to tell the truth, you wouldn't have lost my trust. Ha képes lettél volna elmondani az igazat, nem vesztetted volna el a bizalmamat.

I would have bought this car if I had had more money. Megvettem volna ezt az autót, ha több pénzem lett volna.

If I had been there, you would have been the happiest. Ha ott lettem volna, te lettél volna a legboldogabb.

Ha eddig eljutottál, jutalmad egy bárgyú, angolokról szóló vicc:

Hogy nevetnek az angolok?

IF, IF, IF ...

Unit 10. Reading: Crime and punishment

Experimentation with alcohol and drugs during adolescence is common. Unfortunately, teenagers often don't see the link between their actions today and the consequences tomorrow. They also have a tendency to feel indestructible and immune to the problems that others experience.

Using alcohol and tobacco at a young age has negative health effects. While some teens will experiment and stop, or continue to use occasionally, without significant problems. Others will develop a dependency, moving on to more dangerous drugs and causing significant harm to themselves and possibly others. It is difficult to know which teens will experiment and stop and which will develop serious problems.

Teenagers at risk for developing serious alcohol and drug problems include those:

- with a family history of substance use disorders
- who are depressed
- who have low self-esteem, and
- who feel like they don't fit in or are out of the mainstream

Teenagers abuse a variety of drugs, both legal and illegal. Legally available drugs include alcohol, prescribed medications, inhalants (fumes from glues, aerosols, and solvents) and over-the-counter cough, cold, sleep, and diet medications. The most commonly used illegal drugs are marijuana (pot), stimulants (cocaine, crack, and speed), LSD, PCP, opiates, heroin, and designer drugs (Ecstasy). The use of illegal drugs is increasing, especially among young teens. The average age of first marijuana use is 14, and alcohol use can start before age 12. The use of marijuana and alcohol in high school has become common.

Drug use is associated with a variety of negative consequences, including increased risk of serious drug use later in life, school failure, and poor judgment which may put teens at risk for accidents, violence, unplanned and unsafe sex, and suicide.

Parents can prevent their children from using drugs by talking to them about drugs, open communication, role modeling, responsible behavior, and recognizing if problems are developing.

Warning signs of teenage alcohol and drug use may include:

Physical: Fatigue, repeated health complaints, red and glazed eyes, and a lasting cough.

Emotional: personality change, sudden mood changes, irritability, irresponsible behavior, low self-esteem, poor judgment, depression, and a general lack of interest.

Family: starting arguments, breaking rules, or withdrawing from the family.

School: decreased interest, negative attitude, drop in grades, many absences, truancy, and discipline problems.

Social problems: new friends who are less interested in standard home and school activities, problems with the law, and changes to less conventional styles in dress and music.

Some of the warning signs listed above can also be signs of other problems. Parents may recognize signs of trouble and possible use of alcohol and other drugs with their teenager. If you have concerns you may want to consult a physician to rule out physical causes of the warning signs. This should often be followed or accompanied by a comprehensive evaluation by a child and adolescent psychiatrist or mental health professional.

Words

to get high	elszállni
euphoria	eufória
inhibition	gátlás
joint	spangli
hallucinogenic	hallucinogén
amphetamine	amfetamin
narcotic	kábítószer
heroin	heroin
addiction	szenvedély
drug addict	kábítószer függő
alcohol addict	alkoholista
violent	erőszakos
violence	erőszak
to legalise	legalizál
to cause harm	kárt okoz
brutality	brutalitás
to consume	fogyaszt
to punish	megbüntet
to cure	meggyógyít
rehabilitation centre	drogelvonó
drug-dealer	drogkereskedő
to sentence	elítél
to threaten	fenyeget
to influence	befolyásol
drug abuse	kábítószerrel való visszaélés
to resist temptation	ellenáll a kísértésnek
forbidden	tiltott
to take sth into consideration	figyelembe vesz
to prevent	megelőz
hangover	másnaposság
gambling	szerencsejáték
to rape	megerőszakol
death penalty	halálbüntetés

capital punishment	halálbüntetés
to imprison	bebörtönöz
spy	kém
innocent	ártatlan
guilty	bűnös
to reach the verdict	meghozni ítéletet
jury	esküdtszék
serial murder	sorozatgyilkos
discharge	felmentés, szabadlábra helyezés
probation	feltételes szabadlábra helyezés
assassination	merénylet
stabbing	késelés
smuggling	csempészés
fraud	csalás
bribery	vesztegetés
blackmail	zsarolás
arson	szándékos tűzgyújtás
embezzlement	sikkasztás, hűtlen kezelés
hijack	eltérítés
pickpocket	zsebtolvaj
shoplifter	tolvaj

UNIT 11.

Listening Unit 11 – Festivals and Celebrations

How is Guy Fawkes celebrated in New Zealand?



New Zealanders celebrate the annual festival in the same way as the English do, with bonfires and fireworks lit on the official November 5 night (the only difference being that it's a lot warmer in New Zealand at this time of year!)

For kiwis, Guy Fawkes has become an occasion signalling the coming of summer and a chance for family and friends to get together and take in the excitement of spectacular fireworks. Unlike other festivals celebrated in New Zealand, Guy Fawkes does not include any special foods nor are gifts exchanged.

Guy Fawkes may be celebrated at home or at large public fireworks displays at schools, parks and stadiums. These public events enable people to see much more spectacular displays of fireworks, and also have a much higher level of safety than home-based celebrations.

Why are fireworks and bonfires part of the festival?

On the very night that the Gunpowder Plot was foiled, November 5th, 1605, bonfires were set alight to celebrate the safety of the King. Since then, the night has become known as Bonfire Night. The event is commemorated every year with fireworks and by burning effigies of Guy Fawkes on a bonfire. The effigies are made out of old clothes stuffed with scrunched-up paper to make them look like a man (i.e. Guy Fawkes). These “Guys” are then put on the fire and burned.

Important aspects of Guy Fawkes

The letting off of fireworks is becoming an increasingly controversial subject with many people calling for a ban on the sale of fireworks. Each year that the night is celebrated the fire service is stretched to its limits dealing with fireworks related call-outs. In addition, Hospital Accident and Emergency departments have the dreadful task of treating burns, eye injuries and sometimes deaths caused by the misuse of fireworks and bonfires.

(resource: <https://www.kiwifamilies.co.nz/articles/guy-fawkes/>) (resource: <http://ouraukland.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/articles/news/2015/10/staying-safe-during-guy-fawkes/>)

Unit 11. Speaking: Festivals and Celebrations

Try to speak about this picture for about 2–3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



PROMPTS:

- to observe
- to give a party
- traditions
- all the more important
- Sunday best
- to gather
- enormous
- ancient customs
- home-made cakes
- to set out
- to call on
- essential
- pleasing
- from year to year

– to buy everything but the kitchen sink (mindent összevásárolni)

(<http://www.bangkok.com/magazine/best-festivals-in-thailand.htm>)

Unit 11. Reading: Festivals and celebrations

HANUKKAH

Hanukkah or Chanukah is the Jewish Festival of Lights. It dates back to two centuries before the beginning of Christianity.

The festival begins on the 25th day of Kislev and is celebrated for eight days. In the western calendar Hanukkah is celebrated in November or December.

The word Hanukkah means rededication and commemorates the Jews' struggle for religious freedom.

History

The festival marks the phenomenal victory of a group of Jews called the Maccabees over the Syrian Greeks, the most powerful army of the ancient world.

At the end of the three-year war, the Maccabees recaptured Jerusalem and rededicated the temple.

When the Maccabees rededicated the temple, they discovered a single cruse of oil with the seal of the High Priest still intact.

When they came to light the eight-branched temple candelabrum, the menorah, they had enough oil to last only a day.

But the menorah miraculously stayed alight for eight days. This became known as the miracle of the oil.

Lightning the Menorah

It is because of this miracle that candles are lit from right to left during Hanukkah.

On day one, the first candle is lit; on the second night Jews light two candles, and the pattern continues. By the eighth night, all eight candles are alight. They are lit from a separate candle, the Shamash or servant candle.

During Hanukkah Jews follow simple religious rituals in addition to their regular daily prayers from the Siddur, the Jewish prayer book. They recite three blessings during the eight-day festival. On the first night, they recite three and on subsequent nights they say the first two.

The blessings are said before the candles are lit. After the lights have been kindled, they recite the Hanerot Halalu prayer and then sing a hymn.

Traditional Hanukkah foods

Potato pancakes and deep-fried doughnuts are traditional Hanukkah treats.

Fried food in particular reminds Jews of the miracle of the oil and the candles that burned for eight days after the Maccabees won back the temple in Jerusalem.

Dairy products are often eaten during Hanukkah. The tradition has its roots in the story of Judith (Yehudit) who saved her village from the Syrians by making an offering of cheese and wine to the governor of the enemy troops.

Judith encouraged the governor to get drunk. After he collapsed on the floor, she beheaded him with his own sword and took his head back to the village in a basket. When the Syrian troops discovered their governor had been beheaded, they fled.

Playing dreidel

It is customary to play games at Hanukkah. The most common game uses a dreidel and is a popular way of helping children to remember the great miracle.

A dreidel is a spinning top with a different Hebrew letter inscribed on each of its four sides.

The four letters form an acronym that means: 'A great miracle happened here.'

The stakes are usually chocolate coins but sometimes pennies, peanuts or raisins are also used.

Each player puts a coin in the pot and takes it in turns to spin the dreidel. The letter on which the dreidel stops determines each player's score.

Other games include trying to knock other players' dreidels down and trying to spin as many dreidels as possible at any one time.

Giving gifts

The exchange of gifts or gelt is another old and cherished Hanukkah custom that dates back to at least the Middle Ages, possibly earlier. Gelt is the Yiddish term for money. Modern day gelt includes saving bonds, cheques and chocolate coins wrapped in gold foil.

WESAK

Wesak is the most important of the Buddhist festivals and is celebrated on the full moon in May. It celebrates the Buddha's birthday, and, for some Buddhists, also marks his birth and death.

Buddha literally means 'one who is awake' and has become enlightened. It is a term that denotes a person who has attained the supreme wisdom and compassion of Enlightenment.

To Buddhists Enlightenment is a blessed state in which the individual attains Nirvana – the transcendence of desire and suffering.

Buddha's disciples

Many of Buddha's disciples have attained Enlightenment, and there have been many other Enlightened teachers.

The celebration of Wesak is a chance to remember the story of how the Buddha gained Enlightenment, and to reflect on what it might mean for individual Buddhists to move towards Enlightenment themselves.

Celebrations

The festival is celebrated with much colour and gaiety. Homes may be cleaned and decorated. In Thailand, for example, special Wesak lanterns are made of paper and wood, and often there a large ceremonial releases of caged birds.

In many countries during the festival, Buddhists will visit their local temple for services and teaching, and will give offerings to the monks of food, candles and flowers.

Chanting and praying are an important part of Wesak. The 'Bathing the Buddha' ceremony is also often included. Water is poured over the shoulders of the Buddha and serves as a reminder to purify the mind from greed, hatred and ignorance.

Chinese Buddhists incorporate elements of their country's culture into their religious celebrations like the traditional dancing dragons. Gifts are taken to an altar to be offered to the Buddha statues. This shows respect and gratitude to the Buddha for his life and teachings.

If there is food it is usually vegetarian as Buddhists try not to harm animals.

DIWALI

Diwali, the Hindu festival of lights, is the most popular of all the festivals from South Asia, and is also the occasion for celebrations by Jains and Sikhs as well as Hindus. The festival of Diwali extends over five days. Because of the lights, fireworks, and sweets involved, it's a great favourite with children.

The festival celebrates the victory of good over evil, light over darkness, and knowledge over ignorance, although the actual legends that go with the festival are different in different parts of India.

The Times of India summed up the modern meaning of Diwali:

Regardless of the mythological explanation one prefers, what the festival of lights really stands for today is a reaffirmation of hope, a renewed commitment to friendship and goodwill, and a religiously sanctioned celebration of the simple - and some not so simple - joys of life.

Diwali UK

In Britain, as in India, the festival is a time for thoroughly spring-cleaning the home and for wearing new clothes and most importantly, decorating buildings with fancy lights.

The British city of Leicester is noted for its Diwali celebrations.

Diwali dates

The date of Diwali is set by the Hindu calendar and so it varies in the Western calendar. It usually falls in October or November.

Diwali is a New Year festival in the Vikrama calendar, where it falls on the night of the new moon in the month of Kartika.

Business people regard it as a favourable day to start a new accounting year because of the festival's association with the goddess of wealth. Diwali is also used to celebrate a successful harvest.

A row of lights

The name of the festival comes from the Sanskrit word dipavali, meaning row of lights.

Diwali is known as the 'festival of lights' because houses, shops, and public places are decorated with small earthenware oil lamps called diyas. These lamps, which are traditionally fueled by mustard oil, are placed in rows in windows, doors and outside buildings to decorate them.

The lamps are lit to help the goddess Lakshmi find her way into people's homes. They also celebrate one of the Diwali legends, which tells of the return of Rama and Sita to Rama's kingdom after fourteen years of exile.

In towns (and in Britain) electric lights are often used in Diwali displays.

In India oil lamps are often floated across the river Ganges - it is regarded as a good omen if the lamp manages to get all the way across.

Fireworks

Fireworks are also a big part of the Diwali celebrations, although in recent years there has been a move against them because of noise and atmospheric pollution and the number of accidental deaths and injuries.

Goddesses

Lakshmi, wealth and prosperity

For many Indians the festival honours Lakshmi, the goddess of wealth.

People start the new business year at Diwali, and some Hindus will say prayers to the goddess for a successful year.

Some people build a small altar to the goddess and decorate it with money and with pictures of the rewards of wealth, such as cars and houses.

Celebrating Lakshmi

Hindus will leave the windows and doors of their houses open so that Lakshmi can come in. Rangoli are drawn on the floors - rangoli are patterns and the most popular subject is the lotus flower. This because images of Lakshmi traditionally show her either holding a lotus or sitting on one. There is much feasting and celebration, and the Diwali lamps are regarded as making it easy for Lakshmi to find her way to favoured houses.

Kali

The goddess Kali is celebrated at Diwali in the Bengali and Oriya areas of India.

Gambling

The downside of the festival is that many Indians see it as an occasion to gamble. This comes from a legend that the that goddess Parvati played dice with her husband on this day and she said that anyone who gambled on Diwali night would do well.

Gifts

Like Christmas in the West, Diwali is very much a time for buying and exchanging gifts.

CHRISTMAS

The story of Christmas

Christmas is marked on the **25 December** (7 January for Orthodox Christians).

Christmas is a Christian holy day that marks the birth of Jesus, the son of God.

Jesus' birth, known as the *nativity*, is described in the New Testament of the Bible.

The Gospels of Matthew and Luke give different accounts. It is from them that the nativity story is pieced together.

Both accounts tell us that Jesus was born to a woman called Mary who was engaged to Joseph, a carpenter. The Gospels state that Mary was a virgin when she became pregnant.

In Luke's account Mary was visited by an angel who brought the message that she would give birth to God's son. According to Matthew's account, Joseph was visited by an angel who persuaded him to marry Mary rather than send her away or expose her pregnancy.

Matthew tells us about some wise men who followed a star that led them to Jesus' birthplace and presented him with gifts of gold, frankincense and myrrh. Luke tells how shepherds were led to Bethlehem by an angel. According to tradition, Joseph and Mary travelled to Bethlehem shortly before Jesus' birth. Joseph had been ordered to take part in a census in his home town of Bethlehem.

All Jewish people had to be counted so the Roman Emperor could determine how much money to collect from them in tax. Those who had moved away from their family homes, like Joseph, had to return to have their names entered in the Roman records.

Joseph and Mary set off on the long, arduous 90-mile journey from Nazareth along the valley of the River Jordan, past Jerusalem to Bethlehem. Mary travelled on a donkey to conserve her energy for the birth.

But when they arrived in Bethlehem the local inn was already full with people returning for the census. The innkeeper let them stay in the rock cave below his house which was used as a stable for his animals.

It was here, next to the noise and filth of the animals, that Mary gave birth to her son and laid him in a manger.

The first Christmas

The Gospels do not mention the date of Jesus' birth. It was not until the 4th century AD that Pope Julius I set 25th December as the date for Christmas. This was an attempt to Christianise the Pagan celebrations that already took place at this time of year. By 529, 25th December had become a civil holiday and by 567 the twelve days from 25th December 25th to the Epiphany were public holidays.

Christmas is not only a Christian festival. The celebration has roots in the Jewish holiday of Hanukkah, the festivals of the ancient Greeks, the beliefs of the Druids and the folk customs of Europe.

Historical celebration

Traditions

Christmas has always been a strange combination of Christian, Pagan and folk traditions. As far back as 389 AD, St Gregory Nazianzen (one of the Four Fathers of the Greek Church) warned against 'feasting in excess, dancing and crowning the doors'. The Church was already finding it hard to bury the Pagan remnants of the midwinter festival.

Ban on Christmas

From the middle of the 17th century until the early 18th century the Christian Puritans suppressed Christmas celebrations in Europe and America.

The Puritan movement began during the reign of Queen Elizabeth in England (1558-1603). They believed in strict moral codes, plenty of prayer and close following of New Testament scripture.

As the date of Christ's birth is not in the Gospels the Puritans thought that Christmas was too strongly linked to the Pagan Roman festival and were opposed to all celebration of it, particularly the lively, boozy celebrations inherited from Saturnalia. In 1644 all Christmas activities were banned in England. This included decorating houses with evergreens and eating mince pies.

Victorian Christmas

After a lull in Christmas celebrations the festival returned with a bang in the Victorian Era (1837-1901). The Victorian Christmas was based on nostalgia for Christmases past. Dickens' *A Christmas Carol* (1843) inspired ideals of what Christmas should be, capturing the imagination of the British and American middle classes. This group had money to spend and made Christmas a special time for the family.

The Victorians gave us the kind of Christmas we know today, reviving the tradition of carol singing, borrowing the practice of card giving from St. Valentine's day and popularising the Christmas tree.

Although the Victorians attempted to revive the Christmas of medieval Britain, many of the new traditions were Anglo-American inventions. From the 1950s, carol singing was revived by ministers, particularly in America, who incorporated them into Christmas celebrations in the Church. Christmas cards were first sent by the British but the Americans, many of whom were on the move and away from their families, picked up the practice because of a cheap postal service and because it was a good way of keeping in contact with people at home.

Christmas trees were a German tradition, brought to Britain and popularised by the royal family. Prince Albert first introduced the Christmas tree into the royal household in Britain in 1834. He was given a tree as a gift by the Queen of Norway which was displayed in Trafalgar Square.

Modern celebration

Christmas in church

Advent wreaths are popular especially in churches. They are made with fir branches and four candles. A candle is lit each Sunday during Advent.

Christmas Day is the Christian festival most celebrated by non-churchgoers, and churches are often completely full for the service late on Christmas Eve.

Father Christmas

An important part of today's Christmas is the myth of Father Christmas (called Santa Claus in America). His origins are in Christian and European tradition. But the visual image of Father Christmas that we have today is the one popularised by American card-makers in the Victorian era.

Traditionally, Father Christmas visits houses at midnight on Christmas Eve, coming down the chimney to leave presents. Children hang up stockings - nowadays usually large socks with Christmas patterns knitted into them - for Father Christmas to fill with little toys and presents ('stocking fillers').

Christmas today

Today, only around 60 percent of people in the UK are Christian but Christmas remains the biggest holiday in the calendar. It is a largely secular holiday, with the main element the exchange of gifts on Christmas day.

In previous centuries the Church worried about Pagan influence on the Christian festival, but today ethical considerations are focused on the over-commercialism of the holiday with each person in the UK spending on average £400 on Christmas related purchases.

Protests against consumerism have been made by Christians and non-Christians such as 'Buy Nothing Christmas', encouraging people to spend time with their families instead of spending money on them.

With carol concerts, Christmas trees, office parties, midnight mass, and television programmes, today's festival has elements of the Pagan, Christian and folk traditions.

Christmas remains a time to forget about the long dark days and celebrate with friends and family.

RAMADAN

Ramadan

Ramadan is the ninth month of the Islamic calendar and there are several reasons why it is considered important:

- The Qur'an was first revealed during this month
- The gates of Heaven are open
- The gates of Hell are closed and the devils are chained up in Hell.

The Qur'an revealed

“The month of Ramadan in which was revealed the Qur'an, a guidance for mankind and clear proofs for the guidance and the criterion (between right and wrong)”

The actual night that the Qur'an was revealed to the Prophet Muhammad is called Lailat ul Qadr, and to stand in prayer on this one night is said to be better than a thousand months of worship.

Ramadan is often called ‘month of the Qur'an’ because of this, and Muslims attempt to recite as much of the Qur'an as they can during the month. Most mosques will recite one thirtieth of the Qur'an each night during the Taraweeh prayers.

No one knows on which particular night the Qur'an was first revealed, but it is said to be one of the last ten nights of Ramadan.

The gates of Heaven are open and the gates of Hell are closed

It was narrated from Abu Hurayrah (may Allah be pleased with him) that the Messenger of Allah (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) said: “When Ramadan comes, the gates of Paradise are opened and the gates of Hell are closed, and the devils are put in chains.”

Muslims believe that their good actions bring a greater reward during this month than at any other time of year, because this month has been blessed by Allah.

They also believe that it is easier to do good in this month because the devils have been chained in Hell, and so can't tempt believers. This doesn't mean that Muslims will not behave badly, but that any evil that they do comes from within themselves, without additional encouragement from Satan.

Almost all Muslims try to give up bad habits during Ramadan, and some will try to become better Muslims by praying more or reading the Qur'an.

Muslims believe that this is one way that the chaining up of the devils is manifested, since there is no other reason for them to do so.

Special practices

There are a number of special practices which are only done during Ramadan.

Fasting the whole month long

Although Muslims fast during other times of the year, Ramadan is the only time when fasting, or *sawm*, is obligatory during the entire month for every able Muslim.

Ramadan is intended to increase self-control in all areas, including food, sleeping, sex and the use of time.

Taraweeh Prayers

These are long night prayers, which are not obligatory, but highly recommended.

Mosques are filled with worshippers who go to attend these prayers, which usually last for one and a half to two hours.

These prayers also give Muslims a chance to meet at the mosque every day, and so they also help to improve relationships in the Muslim community.

I'tikaf

I'tikaf refers to going into seclusion during the last ten nights of Ramadan, in order to seek Lailat ul Qadr by praying and reading the Qur'an. Some people live in the mosque during this time for serious reflection and worship. Others spend a few hours at the mosque or home.

Islam offers an exemption to the sick from observing their fast during the holy month of Ramadan. However, some patients may be able to fast if their health is not adversely affected during the period of fasting. In such cases, advice from pharmacists and doctors about changing prescriptions to equally effective drugs that have reduced dosing, such as sustained release formulations, may be beneficial to the fasting Muslim. In all cases of illness, it is recommended that Muslim patients, if they do fast, do so under medical supervision.

Unit 11. Reading: Festivals and celebrations

Words

to commemorate megemlékezik
struggle küzdelem
cruse agyagedény
intact sértetlen, ép
miracle csoda
blessing áldás
to kindle kigyúl, meggyújt
to behead lefejez
to flee menekül
stake tét
saving bonds megtakarítási kötvények
holy szent
nativity Jézus születése
to persuade rávesz, meggyőz
to expose pregnancy napvilágra hozza a terhességet
shepherd juhász
census népszámlálás
mistletoe fagyöngy
to bury temet, eltemet
carol singers karácsonyi énekesek
penitential bűnbánat
wreath koszorú
consumerism fogyasztó (vásárlással kapcsolatos)
feast lakoma
to ban tilt, betilt
in excess túlsúlyban
boozy celebration részeges ünneplés
remnant maradvány, maradék

lull csillapodás, csend
literally szó szerint
to be enlightened megvilágosodik
to attain elér, megszerez
supreme wisdom legfőbb bölcsesség
compassion irgalom, könyörület
to gain kap, szerez
gaiety vidámság
lantern lámpás
to release elenged
cage kalitka
monk szerzetes
greed kapzsiság, mohóság
hatred gyűlölködés
ignorance tudatlanság
chain lánc
to reveal feltár, megmutat
fasting böjtölés
exempt kivétel
to abstain tartózkodik vm-től
adversely károsan
to affirm megerősít
commitment elkötelezettség
harvest szüret
earthenware agyagáru
exile száműzetés
dice dobókocka

Unit 11. Listening: Services



(<http://www.weddingmapper.com>)

source: <http://www.excellentesl4u.com/esl-eating-out-reading.html>

Extract: What a British Person Should Know When Eating Out in America

Eating out may be a simple thing, but for British people who have just come to America, it could be an experience full of surprises. Here are five main differences a Brit should pay attention to when eating out in a restaurant in America.

Ordering Drinks: The first thing a waiter would ask when you sit down in an American restaurant is whether you would like bottled or tap water. If you choose bottled, you will then be asked whether you would prefer still or sparkling. Soon, the water you ordered will be brought to you. Coffee and soft drinks will also be gladly refilled. The waiter will ask if you want another coffee or coke. In Britain, water and soft drinks must be requested and they are not free.

The Service: Waiters in American restaurants are more pleasant and attentive. They are always chatty and often come to your table during the meal to refill drinks and check everything is okay. In England, waiters are less likely to frequently check on customers. If you need something, you can raise your hand and waive at the waiter or else, you will be left alone for hours.

The Menu: In an American restaurant, picky eaters can customize the menu to suit their exact preferences. You can order salad but without tomato or with a special dressing to accommodate your diet. There is a friendly atmosphere that encourages you to have exactly what you want and satisfy your appetite. On the other hand, people in England tend to order a meal with all the options that come with it. It is less common for them to complain about the food or have the waiter send dishes back to the kitchen. **Picking up the Bill:** In America, a waiter will bring you the bill even though you have not asked for it. This would be seen as very impolite by British customers, as it implies that they are being hurried out of the restaurant.

Tipping: Tipping in England is optional. You will tip if you are satisfied with the meal and service, which is generally about 10%. If you are dissatisfied, you do not need to tip and this is quite common. In America, a tip of 15–20% is generally mandatory. For American waiters, tipping is the main source of their income. Even if the service is bad you should still tip, but it makes sense to give a smaller tip.

Vocabulary:

- attentive – figyelmes
- bill – számla
- bottle – üveg, palack
- dissatisfied – elégedetlen
- experience – tapasztalat
- full of – tele
- gladly – örömmel
- mandatory – kötelező, szükséges

- optional – válsztható, tetszőleges
- picky – válogatós
- sparkling water – szénsavas víz
- still water – szénsavmentes víz
- surprise – meglepetés
- to accomodate – illeszkedni
- to complain about – reklamálni, panaszkodni
- to encourage – bátorítani
- to imply – ráutalni, magában foglalni
- to order – rendelni
- to pay attention – figyelni
- to refill – újratölteni, utántölteni
- to request – kérni, kívánni
- waiter – pincér
- waive – intés

UNIT 12.

Reading Unit 12 – Politics

PRESIDENTIAL ELECTIONS – READING COMPREHENSION



Presidential Elections

Americans elect a new president on the first Tuesday in November. It's an important event that happens once every four years. Currently, the president is always elected from one of the two main parties in the United States: the Republicans and the Democrats.

There are other presidential candidates. However, it is unlikely that any of these “third party” candidates will win. It certainly hasn't happened in the last one hundred years.

In order to become the presidential nominee of a party, the candidate must win the primary election. Primary elections are held throughout each state in the United States in the first half of any election year. Then, the delegates attend their party convention in order to nominate their chosen candidate. Usually, as in this election, it's clear who will be the nominee. However, in the past parties have been divided and choosing a nominee has been a difficult process.

Once the nominees have been selected, they campaign throughout the country. A number of debates are usually held in order to better understand the candidates' points of view. These points of view often reflect their party's platform. A party platform is best described as the general beliefs and policies a party holds.

Candidates cross the country by plane, bus, train or by car giving speeches. These speeches are often called 'stump speeches'. In the 19th century, candidates would stand on tree stumps to deliver their speeches. These stump speeches repeat the candidate's basic views and aspirations for the country.

They are repeated many hundred of times by each candidate.

Many people believe that campaigns in the United States have become too negative. Each night you can see many attack ads on the television. These short ads contain sound bites which often distort the truth or something the other candidate has said or done. Another recent problem has been voter turnout. There is often less than 60% turnout for national elections. Some people don't register to vote, and some registered voters don't show up at the voting booths. This angers many citizens who feel that voting is the most important responsibility of any citizen. Others point out that not voting is expressing an opinion that the system is broken.

The United States maintains an extremely old, and some say inefficient, voting system. This system is called the Electoral College. Each state is assigned electoral votes based on the number of senators and representatives that state has in Congress. Each state has two Senators. The number of representatives is determined by the states' population but is never less than one. The electoral votes are decided by the popular vote in each state. One candidate wins all of the electoral votes in a state.

In other words, Oregon has 8 electoral votes. If 1 million people vote for the Republican candidate and one million and ten people vote for the Democratic candidate ALL 8 electoral votes go to the democratic candidate. Many people feel that this system should be abandoned.

(resource: www.thoughtco.com/presidential-elections-reading-comprehension-1211997) Picture: (www.4thofjuly1776.com/usa-flag-images-for-forth-of-july-2017)

The Roma Minority in Hungary

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

The Roma Hungarians are sub-group of [Hungarian people](#) of [Roma](#) descent who represents 2% (official census) or 4–10% (unofficial estimation) of the total population. Since [World War II](#), the number of Roma Hungarians has increased rapidly, multiplying sevenfold in the last century. Today every fifth or sixth newborn is Roma Hungarians. Today, Hungary represents the country with the largest Roma ancestry as percentage of total population in the world. Estimates based on current demographic trends project that in 2050, 20.9% of the population (1.64 million people) will be Roma Hungarians. The Roma continue to be among the poorest in the country. Their birth rates are much higher and their average expected life span is significantly lower than the national average.

Whereas almost half the Hungarian secondary school students enroll in vocational secondary schools or comprehensive grammar schools, which provide better chances, only one in five Roma children does so. Moreover, the drop-out rate in secondary schools is significant. The Roma (called *cigány* in Hungarian) suffer particular problems in Hungary, for example in the educational system. Only 61% of Roma Hungarians aged 15 and above has completed primary education, and just 13% has completed secondary education. Currently, around 90% of Roma children complete primary education. A research of sample schools however suggests that the drop-out rate among Roma is still almost twice as high as among non-Roma. The share of Roma students entering secondary education has increased greatly, with the percentage of Roma children not pursuing any secondary education dropping from 49% to 15% between 1994 and 1999. But that increase is almost exclusively due to increased enrollment in the lowest levels of education, which provide only limited chances for employment.

OTHER EXAMPLES

There are problems related to the Roma minority in Hungary, and the very subject is a heated and disputed topic.

Objective problems:

- Education/poor chances for work: slightly more than 80% of Roma children complete [primary education](#), but only one third continue studies into the intermediate (secondary) level. This is far lower than the more than 90% proportion of children of non-Roma families who continue studies at an intermediate level. Less than 1% of Roma hold higher educational certificates.
- Poverty: most of the Roma people live in significantly worse conditions than others.

- Bad health conditions: life expectancy is about 10 years less compared to non-Romas.
- Lack of debate regarding the subject: academic researchers and members of the mainstream press disregard any critics and study the subject in the canonical viewpoint. Critics don't have the funds necessary to perform alternative studies.

Please note that this list below consists disputed issues.

- Natural repugnance: there are differences in the social behavior of the host nation and the Roma people leading to a disinclination towards each other. This is slowly decaying on the Hungarian side (36–38%); as of 2007, there is no research made regarding the Roma side. Integration problems on the host side: there's a significant prejudice towards Roma people in Hungary affecting the motivation for integration. Exact numbers are unknown as the research material available mixes prejudice with "post-judice".
- Integration problems on the Roma side: some Roma people have apparent trouble adjusting to the European standards of social behavior regarding loud-mouthing, littering and being non-violent, law-abiding and working citizens. As of 2007, there is no research available on this issue.
- Problems with motivation for work: as of 2007, what can be earned with work can be obtained having many children, which does not move Roma people towards work as they usually have more children anyway.
- Crime: "gipsy crime" ("cigánybűnözés" in Hungarian) is a phenomenon well disputed and often misunderstood. Although originally it refers to some crimes (eg. stealing of items made of copper, lynch, some robbery types, scuffle between families) often committed by Roma offenders, critics say it stigmatizes all Roma people. As a result (as of 2007), Hungarian authorities don't collect any data that could be used to study the issue, therefore no research is available regarding this topic. It's believed that there is a pattern in the crimes committed by Roma criminals and that the ratio of Roma inmates are much higher compared to non-Romas (around 70–80%), this is not an individual phenomenon since it's common in other countries too.
- School segregation: likely due to repugnance, non-Roma people tend to choose schools with less problematic Roma children. It's also believed that there were cases where healthy Roma children were assigned to classes for pupils with [learning disabilities](#) (although this might have been a financial issue).

WORDS – ROMA MINORITY

descent	származás
estimation	becslés
to pursue	folytat
disputed topic	vitatott téma
canonical viewpoint	egyházi nézőpont
to disregard	figyelmen kívül hagy
mainstream press	fő (fővonal) médiák
repugnance	ellenszenv, idegenkedés
disinclination	ellenszenv, idegenkedés
law abiding	törvénytisztelő
scuffle	összetűzés, verekedés
inmate	lakó, bentlakó
to be assigned to ...	beoszt valahova

Unit 12. Speaking: Expression for the oral exam

HUNGARY:

Nowadays Hungary is shifting towards a bi-party system similar to the one in Britain and the United States.

There are two major parties and some smaller ones.

..... (number) parties have seats in the parliament.

the Alliance of Young Democrats - FIDESZ the Hungarian Socialist Party - MSZP the Hungarian Democratic Forum - MDF the Alliance of Free Democrats - SZDSZ party is in opposition a coalition is set up by ...

BRITAIN:

governing party Labour party headed by ...

Conservative party (Tories) some small parties in the House of Commons

THE UNITED STATES:

Two major parties and small small parties which do not play a significant role in the American political life.

Democratic Party Republican Party Election: representatives to the House of Representatives are elected every two years. There are altogether 435 representatives and the seats are allotted following the rule of proportional representation, meaning that a more populous state has more representatives, while a scarcely populated one has fewer. In the upper house, the Senate, there are one hundred senators, elected for six years, based on the law of equal representation. Since there are fifty states, each sends two senators to Capitol Hill.

Unit 12. Speaking: Politics



PROMPTS:

- elections
- every four year
- age limit
- to be situated
- to be bordered by

- ethnic minority
- young people
- efficient
- to opt
- debate
- heated
- simple majority
- ceremonial
- approval
- to govern
- to proclaim
- ruling party
- in coalition with

(resource:<http://www.alamy.com/stock-photo-budapest-12th-oct-2014-a-little-girl-helps-herparents-to-cast-their-74239285.html>)

Presidential Elections

Alex: This election is going to be close!

Helen: I think you're right. The Republicans and the Democrats are fighting for every vote.

Alex: Did you watch the conventions?

Helen: Yes, I watched a little bit. The party platforms are extremely different.

Alex: Yes, they are! Watching them on TV, it was hard to believe they come from the same country!

Helen: Oh, it wasn't that bad.

Alex: Hmmmm, anyway the delegates certainly clapped hard for their nominees.

Helen: But it was the same stump speech over and over again. In both parties!

Alex: That's what politicians do best. Talk ... the problem is whether they actually do very much.

Helen: Oh, you're a pessimist!

Alex: I wouldn't say that. It's just that I'm sick and tired of all the attack ads.

Helen: I see your point. It would be nice to know what they want to govern the country, rather than why they think the other guy isn't any good.

Alex: They treat us like idiots! I hate sound bites. Short simple statements that don't really give me much information. Treat me like I have a brain.

Helen: Some say we get what we deserve. Voter turnout is so low, perhaps we don't deserve any better.

Alex: But that's why people don't come out to vote. They don't feel represented even if they do vote.

Helen: I think we need a third party in this country.

Alex: I couldn't agree with you more!

Helen: Perhaps a third party would stop the partisanship.

Alex: Another thing that I don't think is fair is the electoral system.

Helen: No kidding! Just think, a state like California has 54 electoral votes. One vote majority in the popular vote and ALL of those 54 votes go to ONE candidate!

Alex: It just isn't fair.

Helen: Of course, there are reasons for that.

Alex: Hmmmm. I guess ...

Helen: Are you a registered voter?

Alex: Of course! I'm a registered voter and I go to the voting booth to vote. I want that vote to represent my voice.

Helen: OK, OK, no need to give a speech. **Alex:** Ha ha, I just think it's my duty as a citizen to vote. **Helen:** Yes, I agree with you. If you can vote, vote!

KEY VOCABULARY

to elect

political party

Republican

Democrat

third party

candidate

presidential nominee

primary election

delegate

to attend

party convention

to nominate

party platform

stump speech

attack ads

sound bite

voter turnout

registered voter

voting booth

Electoral College

electoral vote

popular vote

duty

Gerunds and Infinitives

1. A gerund is a noun made from a verb by adding “-ing.” The gerund form of the verb “read” is “reading.” You can use a gerund as the subject, the complement, or the object of a sentence.

Examples:

- **Reading** helps you learn English. subject of sentence
- Her favorite hobby is **reading**. complement of sentence
- I enjoy **reading**. object of sentence

Gerunds can be made negative by adding “not.”

Examples:

- He enjoys **not working**.
- The best thing for your health is **not smoking**.

2. Infinitives are the “to” form of the verb. The infinitive form of “learn” is “to learn.” You can also use an infinitive as the subject, the complement, or the object of a sentence.

Examples:

- **To learn** is important. subject of sentence
- The most important thing is **to learn**. complement of sentence

– He wants **to learn**. object of sentence

Infinitives can be made negative by adding “not.”

Examples:

– I decided **not to go**.

– The most important thing is **not to give up**.

3. Both gerunds and infinitives can be used as the subject or the complement of a sentence. However, as subjects or complements, gerunds usually sound more like normal, spoken English, whereas infinitives sound more abstract. In the following sentences, gerunds sound more natural and would be more common in everyday English. Infinitives emphasize the possibility or potential for something and sound more philosophical. If this sounds confusing, just remember that 90% of the time, you will use a gerund as the subject or complement of a sentence.

Examples:

– **Learning** is important. normal subject

– **To learn** is important. abstract subject - less common

– The most important thing is **learning**. normal complement

– The most important thing is **to learn**. abstract complement - less common

4. As the object of a sentence, it is more difficult to choose between a gerund or an infinitive. In such situations, gerunds and infinitives are not normally interchangeable. Usually, the main verb in the sentence determines whether you use a gerund or an infinitive.

Examples:

- He **enjoys swimming**. *“Enjoy” requires a gerund.*
- He **wants to swim**. *“Want” requires an infinitive.*

5. Some verbs are followed by gerunds as objects. Examples:

- She **suggested going** to a movie.
- Mary **keeps talking** about her problems.

6. Some verbs are followed by **infinitives**.

Examples:

- She **wants to go** to a movie.
- Mary **needs to talk** about her problems.

7. Gerunds can often be modified with possessive forms such as his, her, its, your, their, our, John's, Mary's, the machine's, and so on. This makes it clearer who or what is performing the action.

Examples:

- I **enjoyed their singing**. *They were singing.*
- She **understood his saying** no to the offer. *He said no.*
- Sam **resented Debbie's coming** late to the dinner. *Debbie came late to the dinner.*
- We **discussed the machine's being** broken. *The machine is broken.*

8. Some verbs are followed by a noun plus an infinitive. In some situations, the noun is required. In other situations, the noun is optional.

Examples:

- The police **ordered the man to stop**. *noun is required*
- She **asked to leave**. *noun is optional*
- She **asked him to leave**. *noun is optional*

9. Some verbs are usually followed by a gerund, BUT they can also be followed by a noun plus infinitive. Using a noun plus infinitive will usually change who is performing the action.

Examples:

- I **advised taking** the train. *in general*
- I **advised him to take** the train. *He will take the train.*

10. There are many “go + gerund” expressions used for adventure sports and individual recreational activities.

Examples:

- I **go swimming** every weekend.
- Would you ever **go skydiving**?

11. Gerunds are used after prepositions. Most commonly, these are “verb + preposition” combinations. You don’t have to memorize these resources, you just need to remember that gerunds are used after prepositions!

Examples:

- They admitted **to committing** the crime.
- Leslie made up **for forgetting** my birthday.
- He is thinking **about studying** abroad.

12. Remember that there are many “adjective + preposition” combinations and “noun + preposition” combinations in English as well. These are also followed by gerunds. Once again, you don't have to memorize these resources, you just need to remember that gerunds are used after prepositions!

Examples:

- Sandy is **scared of flying**. *adjective + preposition*
- Nick is **anxious about taking** the examination. *adjective + preposition*
- His **interest in becoming** a professional snowboarder was well known. *noun + preposition*
- Thomas' **story about seeing** a grizzly bear was really exciting. *noun + preposition*

13. Some verbs can be followed by a gerund or an infinitive, but **with a difference in meaning**.

Examples:

- Nancy **remembered getting** married. *Nancy has a memory of getting married.*
- Fred **remembered to bring** sunblock to the beach. *Fred remembered that he needed to bring sunblock.*

14. Some verbs can be followed by a gerund or an infinitive with **little difference in meaning**.

Examples:

- She **likes swimming**.
- She **likes to swim**.

Although the difference in meaning is small with these particular verbs, and gerunds and infinitives can often be used interchangeably, there is still a meaning difference. Using a gerund suggests that you are referring to real activities or experiences. Using an infinitive suggests that you are talking about potential or possible activities or experiences. Because of this small difference in meaning, gerunds and infinitives cannot always be used interchangeably, such as in the examples below.

Examples:

- The British reporter **likes living** in New York. *He lives in New York and he likes what he experiences there.*
- The British reporter **likes to live** in New York whenever he works in the United States. *He likes the option or possibility of living in New York when he works in the United States.*
- I **like speaking** French because it's such a beautiful language. *I like the experience of speaking French, and the way it makes me feel when I speak the language.*
- I **like to speak** French when I'm in France. *I prefer the option of speaking French when I am in France.*

15. There are many “be + adjective” combinations that are commonly followed by infinitives.

Examples:

- They **were anxious to begin**.
- She **was delighted to receive** such good feedback.
- He **is lucky to have** such good friends.

16. There are also many nouns that are commonly followed by infinitives.

Examples:

- It was a good **decision to move** to San Francisco.
- His **wish to become** an actor was well known.
- Laura's **desire to improve** impressed me.

17. Sometimes infinitives are used to express the idea of “in order to do something.”

Examples:

- He bought the English dictionary **to look up** difficult words. *in order to look up*
- Janine sold her car **to get** the money that she needed. *in order to get*
- Juan uses Englishpage.com **to learn** English. *in order to learn*

This idea of “in order to do something” is found in many English patterns.

TOO + ADJECTIVE/ADVERB + INFINITIVE

Examples:

- The box is **too heavy to carry**.
- The television is **too expensive to buy**.
- Fiona ran **too slowly to win** the race.
- We arrived **too late to see** the beginning of the movie.

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB + ENOUGH + INFINITIVE

Examples:

- She is **tall enough to reach** the book on the shelf.
- Brian was **smart enough to enter** college at the age of 12.
- Linda runs **quickly enough to win** the race.

ENOUGH + NOUN(S) + INFINITIVE

Examples:

- He has **enough money to buy** his own car.
- Cheryl owns **enough books to start** her own library!
- Diane needs **enough time to finish** writing her book.

18. Certain expressions are followed by “ING” forms.

Examples:

- He **had fun fishing**.
- They **had difficulty finding** a parking place.
- She **spent her time practicing** the piano.

19. Verbs which indicate location can often be followed by “ING” forms. This pattern is VERB OF LOCATION + LOCATION + VERB+ING.

Examples:

- Sarah **stood at the corner waiting** for Tom.
- Melissa **lay in bed thinking** about her future.
- Don **clung to the side of the cliff looking** down.

20. In addition to simple gerund and infinitive forms, there are progressive gerund and infinitive forms, passive gerund and infinitive forms and perfect gerund and infinitive forms as well as combinations of these forms. Progressive forms are used to emphasize that an action is taking place now. Passive forms are used to emphasize that the subject of the sentence is being acted upon. Perfect gerund and infinitive forms are used to emphasize completion in both the past and the future. Study the examples below to help understand these concepts. To learn more about progressiveness, the passive voice and the perfect aspect, complete the Englishpage.com [Verb Tense Tutorial](#).

	GERUND FORMS	INFINITIVE FORMS
SIMPLE	The teacher enjoys teaching .	The teacher wants to teach .
PROGRESSIVE	Mr. Smith is really enjoying teaching his class. <i>Looks the same as simple form above.</i>	Mr. Smith would like to be teaching his class.
PASSIVE	The students enjoy being taught .	The students want to be taught .

A Gerund és az Infinitive tanulásakor a következőket tudom ajánlani.

Olvasd át a nyelvtani magyarázatokat, nem baj, ha néhány dolgot nem értesz, mert talán már régen tanultál nyelvtant az iskolában... A példamondatokra viszont nagy figyelmet fordíts, inkább ezeket próbáld meg értelmezni és megjegyezni. Érdekes lesz az angol magyarázatot is átnézni ugyanezt az elvet alapul véve. Nagyon fontos viszont megtanulni, melyik igék után használunk ing-es vagy infinitive alakot, illetve ha mindkettőt lehet, milyen jelentésbeli különbségek fordulnak elő. Ezeket külön részben megtalálod a heti anyagban. Szóval, hajrá!

A GERUNDIUM (-ING FORM)

1. A Gerundiumot -ás, -és végű főnévvel, főnévi igenévvel, vagy mellékmondatokkal fordíthatjuk magyarra.
2. A mondaton belül főnévhez hasonló szerepe van.
3. Megőrizte igei természetét is azzal, hogy ugyanolyan esetet és elöljárót vonz, mint az alapige.
4. Nem lehet névelője és jelzője.
5. Elhatárolás az Infinitive-től: Az Infinitive egy bizonyos esetre utal, a Gerundium általánosságban jelöli meg a cselekvést. Pl. I would like to go to the theatre with him tomorrow. Holnap szeretnék vele menni a színházba. I don't like living alone. Nem szeretek egyedül élni.
6. A to forget, to remember, to stop igék után az Infinitive-nek és a Gerundiumnak eltér a jelentése. Az Infinitive az időben előre, a Gerundium pedig az időben visszafelé mutat ezekben az esetekben. Pl. Please don't forget to give that book to me. – Kérlek, ne felejtse el nekem adni azt a könyvet. I'll never forget seeing the sea. – Sohasem felejttem el, hogy láttam a tengert.

A GERUNDIUM, MINT ALANY

A következő mondatok a Gerundium alanyként történő használatát példázzák: Running is disgraceful but useful. – Szégyen a futás, de hasznos. Reading is amusing. – Az olvasás szórakoztató. Singing is one of my favourite hobbies. – Az éneklés az egyik kedvenc hobbim.

A GERUNDIUM, MINT TÁRGY

1. Gyakran áll Gerundium az érzelmeket kifejező igék után: to love – szeretni, imádni, to like szeretni, kedvelni, to enjoy – élvezni, to mind – bánni, ellenezni, kifogásolni, to bear – tűrni, elviselni, to prefer – előnyben részesíteni, to dislike – nem szeretni, to hate – gyűlölni, utálni, to fear – félni, to regret – sajnálni, to imagine – elképzelni, to remember emlékezni...
2. Ha az ige és a Gerundium alanya különbözik, a következőképpen alkothatunk mondatokat: Pl. I don't like your dog's barking. – Nem szeretem a kutyád ugatását. I like his singing. – Szeretem az énekét. 3. A cselekvés megkezdésével, folytatásával és befejezésével kapcsolatos igék után is állhat Gerundium: to begin – elkezdődni, to start – elkezdeni, to continue – folytatni, to finish befejezni, to stop – befejeződni...
4. A bocsánatkéréssel kapcsolatos igék után is használhatunk Gerundiumot. Pl. Excuse my being late. – Bocsánat a késésért.
5. További igék, amelyek után Gerundium használható: to try – megpróbálni, to suggest javasolni, to need – kell, szükséges.

A GERUNDIUM, MINT (BIRTOKOS) JELZŐ

1. Példamondatok: Mary has the habit of drinking coffee every morning. – Marinak megvan az a szokása, hogyminden reggel kávézik. Don't miss the opportunity of learning languages. – Ne szalaszd el a lehetőséget, ha nyelveket tanulhatsz. I don't like the idea of reading his letter. – Gondolni sem akarok arra, hogy elolvassam a levelét.
2. A Gerundium előjárósó nélkül áll a következő melléknevek után (mivel ezek maguk is előjárók): near, past, like, worth. Pl. This book is worth reading. Megéri elolvasni ezt a könyvet.

A GERUNDIUM, MINT HATÁROZÓSZÓ

1. Az előjárósós Gerundium többféle határozószóként is szerepelhet a mondatban. Pl. I prefer cooking to reading. – Jobban szeretek főzni, mint olvasni. John couldn't prevent me from shouting. – John nem tudott megakadályozni abban, hogy kiabáljak. After writing that letter, I went to the cinema. – Miután megírtam azt a levelet, elmentem a moziba.
2. Néhány névszó után előjárósó nélküli Gerundium áll: worth, busy, no good, no use, no point. Pl. It's no use crying. – Nem érdemes sírni. He is busy reading. – Olvasással van elfoglalva.
3. A következő igék után csak Gerundium állhat: to admit – bevallani, to appreciate – nagyra becsülni, to avoid – elkerülni, to consider – tekinteni vminek, to delay – elhalasztani, to postpone – elhalasztani, to suggest – javasolni, to prevent – megakadályozni, to keep – tartani, to recall – visszahívni, emlékezni, to tolerate – elviselni, to resist – ellenállni.

Infinitive

IGÉBŐL KÉPZETT FŐNÉV

Az Infinitive magyarul: –ni végű főnévi igenév, nem más, mint az igéből képzett főnév. A mondaton belül lehet alany, tárgy, jelző és határozó, tehát a főnévhez (és nem az igéhez!) hasonló szerepet játszik.

AZ INFINITIVE TAGADÁSA

A tagadószó mindig a to + Infinitive előtt áll. Pl. I asked her not to forget me. – Megkértem őt, hogy ne felejtse el engem.

KERÜLHET-E A TO ÉS AZ INFINITIVE KÖZÉ MÁS SZÓ?

A to és az Infinitive közé általában nem kerülhet semmilyen szó a brit angolban. Az amerikai angolban azonban igen gyakran tesznek közéjük határozószót. Pl. Brit angol: I have refused to tell you the story plainly. – Megtagadtam, hogy őszintén elmondjam neked a sztorit. Amerikai angol: I have refused to plainly tell you the story. – Megtagadtam, hogy őszintén elmondjam neked a sztorit.

HASZNÁLJUK-E AZ INFINITIVE-T TO NÉLKÜL?

Az Infinitive-t to nélkül használjuk a következő esetekben:

1. Az érzékelést jelentő igék után nem használjuk a to-t. Pl. I heard her speak Hungarian. (Hallottam őt magyarul beszélni.) Az érzékelést jelentő igék szenvedő alakját követően viszont kitesszük a to-t, pl. He was seen to come home. (Látták, amint hazajött.);
2. Műveltetést, megengedést jelentő igék után nem használjuk a to-t. Pl. The teacher makes the students read. (A tanár olvastat a tanulókkal.) Let's open the window. (Nyissuk ki az ablakot!) A Műveltetést, megengedést jelentő igék szenvedő alakját követően viszont kitesszük a to-t! Pl. I was allowed to go out tonight. (Megengedték, hogy szórakozni menjek ma este.)
3. A módbeli segédigék után, az ought to és a use to kivételével, pl. He can dance. (Tud táncolni.) She will cry. (Sírni fog.)

MELY IGÉKKEL ALKOTHATÓ FŐNÉVI IGENEVES SZERKEZET?

A következő igék után használhatunk Infinitive-t: to agree – egyetérteni, to allow – megengedni, to ask – kérdezni, to begin – elkezdni, to believe hinni, to continue – folytatni, to decide – dönteni, to expect – elvárni, to find out – megtudni, to forget – elfelejteni, to hate – utálni, to like – szeretni, to love – szeretni, to manage – irányítani, sikerülni, to order – parancsolni, to suppose – feltételezni, to prefer – előnyben részesíteni, to promise – megígérni, to refuse – elutasítani, to remember – emlékezni, to start – elkezdni, to stop – megállni, befejezni, to tell – mondani, to try – megpróbálni, to understand – megérteni, to want akarni, to wish – kívánni.

A következő igék szenvedő alakjai után használhatunk Infinitive-t: to allow – megengedni, to believe – elhinni, to consider – megfontolni, to know – tudni, to say mondani, to see – látni, to suppose – feltételezni, to think – gondolni, to permit – megengedni stb. Pl. I was allowed to go away. Megengedték nekem, hogy elmenjek.

És még! Infinitive-t használhatunk a következő melléknevek után: important – fontos, possible – lehetséges, hard – nehéz, interesting – érdekes, good – jó, impossible – lehetetlen, easy – könnyű.

AZ INFINITIVE MINT ALANY

Pl. To love and to be loved are two things. – Szeretni és szeretve lenni két külön dolog. It's important for me to tell you I love you. – Fontos nekem, hogy elmondjam, szeretlek. To live is good. – Élni jó.

AZ INFINITIVE MINT TÁRGY

Pl. I teach people to speak English well. – Arra tanítom az embereket, hogy jól beszéljenek angolul. Tell me don't what know to where to do. go. – Mondd Nem meg, tudom, mit hová megyek. menjek.

Ha egy ige a következő mondatban újra előfordulna Infinitive-ben, nem ismétljük meg azt újra, csak a to-t tesszük ki. Pl. Read that letter, if you want to. – Olvasd el azt a levelet, ha akarsz. I have not done my duty but I ought to. – Nem teljesítettem a kötelességemet, bár kellett volna.

AZ INFINITIVE HASZNÁLATA JELZŐKÉNT

Pl. I don't believe she's such a fool as to go there. – Nem hiszem, hogy olyan bolond, hogy odamenjen.

He is too old to live on his own. –Túl öreg már ahhoz, hogy egyedül éljen. I was the first to see your photo. – Én láttam a fényképet elsőnek. This language is too difficult for me to learn. – Ez a nyelv túlságosan bonyolult ahhoz, hogy megtanuljam.

It's a happy life with nothing to cry. – Boldog élet az, melyben nincs miért sírni. Be never too busy to be beautiful. – Soha ne legyél annyira elfoglalt, hogy ne legyél gyönyörű. I'm too slow to run together with you. – Túl lassú vagyok ahhoz, hogy együtt fussak veled.

Jellegzetes Pl. days to the age to the table and the chairs difficulties to be a house to live in – lakóház stb...

AZ INFINITIVE MINT HATÁROZÓ

Az Infinitive to-ját gyakran nyomatékosítjuk so as, vagy in order szókapcsolatokkal a határozói mellékmondatokban.

Pl. I want to finish my work early, so as to have time to do the shopping. – Korán akarom befejezni a munkámat, hogy legyen időm bevásárolni. I went home at midnight in order not to meet my wife. – Éjfélkor mentem haza, hogy ne találkozzam a feleségemmel.

A to + Infinitive szerkezettel célhatározói mondatokat is alkothatunk, feltéve, hogy a főmondat és a mellékmondat alanya azonos: Pl. I have come here to play with you. – Azért jöttem ide, hogy játszjak veled. Ez a mondat így is helyes: I have come here so that I can play with you. – Azért jöttem ide, hogy tudjak játszani veled. Figyelem!

Ha az alanyok különböznek, csak a 'so that' használható! Pl. I have come here so that you can play with me. – Idejöttem, hogy játszani tudj velem.

További példamondatok:

To tell the truth, it's easy to learn languages. – Az igazat megvallva, könnyű nyelveket tanulni.

I've come to help you. – Azért jöttem, hogy segítek neked.

All my money was spent to buy this dress. – Az összes pénzemem erre a ruhára költöttem.

You had better get up early, in order not to miss the train. – Jobban tennéd, ha korán kelnél, nehogy lekésd a vonatot.

TÁRGYESET FŐNÉVI IGENÉVVEL – ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE

Pl. I want you to be a good boy. – Azt szeretném, hogy jó fiú legyél.

Az alany (I) és az állítmány (want) után következik a tárgyeset (you), majd a főnévi igenév (to be ...).

További példák:

It caused her to cry. – Megríkatta.

My mother expects me to go with them. – Anyám elvárja tőlem, hogy velük menjek.

My son helps me to cook the meal. – A fiam segít nekem főzni.

Figyelem!

A következő igék után tárgyi mellékmondatot kell használni (az Accusative with Infinitive szerkezetet nem használhatjuk): to say – mondani, to hope – remélni, to answer – válaszolni, felelni, to tell – mondani.

Pl.:

I was answered (that) it would rain the next day. – Azt felelték nekem, hogy holnap esni fog.

Verbs Followed by Gerunds

9 = verb followed by a gerund OR a noun + an infinitive

13 = verb followed by a gerund OR an infinitive with a difference in meaning

14 = verb followed by a gerund OR an infinitive with little difference in meaning

admit	He admitted cheating on the test.
advise [9]	The doctor generally advised drinking low-fat milk.
allow [9]	Ireland doesn't allow smoking in bars.
anticipate	I anticipated arriving late.
appreciate	I appreciated her helping me.
avoid	He avoided talking to her.
begin [14]	I began learning Chinese.
can't bear [14]	He can't bear having so much responsibility.
can't help	He can't help talking so loudly.
can't see	I can't see paying so much money for a car.
can't stand [14]	He can't stand her smoking in the office.
cease [14]	The government ceased providing free healthcare.

complete	He completed renovating the house.
consider	She considered moving to New York.
continue [14]	He continued talking.
defend	The lawyer defended her making such statements.
delay	He delayed doing his taxes.
deny	He denied committing the crime.
despise	She despises waking up early.
discuss	We discussed working at the company.

dislike	She dislikes working after 5 PM.
don't mind	I don't mind helping you.
dread [13]	She dreads getting up at 5 AM.
encourage [9]	He encourages eating healthy foods.
enjoy	We enjoy hiking.
finish [13]	He finished doing his homework.
forget [13]	I forgot giving you my book.
hate [14]	I hate cleaning the bathroom.
imagine	He imagines working there one day.
involve	The job involves traveling to Japan once a month.
keep	She kept interrupting me.
like [14]	She likes listening to music.
love [14]	I love swimming.
mention	He mentioned going to that college.
mind	Do you mind waiting here for a few minutes.
miss	She misses living near the beach.

need [13]	The aquarium needs cleaning.
neglect [14]	Sometimes she neglects doing her homework.
permit [9]	California does not permit smoking in restaurants.
postpone	He postponed returning to Paris.
practice	She practiced singing the song.
prefer [14]	He prefers sitting at the back of the movie theater.
propose [14]	I proposed having lunch at the beach.

quit [13]	She quit worrying about the problem.
recall	Tom recalled using his credit card at the store.
recollect	She recollected living in Kenya.
recommend	Tony recommended taking the train.
regret [13]	She regretted saying that.
remember [13]	I remember telling her the address yesterday.
report	He reported her stealing the money.
require [9]	The certificate requires completing two courses.
resent	Nick resented Debbie's being there.
resist	He resisted asking for help.
risk	He risked being caught.
start [14]	He started studying harder.
stop [13]	She stopped working at 5 o'clock.
suggest	They suggested staying at the hotel.
tolerate	I tolerated her talking.
try [13]	Sam tried opening the lock with a paperclip.

understand	I understand his quitting.
urge [9]	They urge recycling bottles and paper.

Verbs Followed by Infinitives

8 = verb followed by an infinitive OR an optional noun + an infinitive

13 = verb followed by a gerund OR an infinitive with a difference in meaning

14 = verb followed by a gerund OR an infinitive with little difference in meaning

agree	Tom agreed to help me.
appear	His health appeared to be better.
arrange	Naomi arranged to stay with her cousin in Miami.
ask [8]	She asked to leave.
begin [13]	He began to talk.
can't bear [14]	He can't bear to be alone.
can't stand [14]	Nancy can't stand to work the late shift.
care	He doesn't care to participate in the activity.
cease [14]	The government ceased to provide free healthcare.
choose [8]	I chose to help.
claim	She claimed to be a princess.
continue [14]	She continued to talk.

decide	We decided to go to Hawaii.
demand	He demanded to speak to Mr. Harris.
deserve	He deserves to go to jail.
dread [13]	I dread to think what might happen.
expect [8]	They expect to arrive early.
fail	He failed to get enough money to pay for the new project.
forget [13]	I forgot to lock the door when I left.
get (be allowed to)	Debbie gets to go to the concert next week! Why can't I?

happen	She happened to be at the bank when it was robbed.
hate [14]	He hates to clean dishes.
hesitate	She hesitated to tell me the problem.
hope	I hope to begin college this year.
intend	We intend to visit you next spring.
learn	I learned to speak Japanese when I was a kid.
like [14]	Samantha likes to read.
love [14]	We love to scuba dive.
manage	He managed to open the door without the key.
need [8,13]	I need to study.
neglect [14]	She neglected to tell me the date of the meeting.
offer	Frank offered to drive us to the supermarket.
plan	We plan to go to Europe this summer.
prefer [14]	He prefers to eat at 7 PM.
prepare [8]	They prepared to take the test.

prepare [8]	They prepared to take the test.
pretend	The child pretended to be a monster.
promise [8]	She promised to stop smoking.
propose [14]	Drew proposed to pay for the trip.
refuse	The guard refused to let them enter the building.
regret [13]	I regret to inform you that your application was rejected.
remember [13]	Did you remember to lock the door when you left?
seem	Nancy seemed to be disappointed.
start [13]	Marge started to talk really fast.

swear	She swore to tell the truth.
tend	He tends to be a little shy.
threaten [8]	He threatened to leave forever.
try [13]	Mary tried to lift the table, but it was too heavy.
vow	He vowed to get revenge.
wait	She waited to buy a movie ticket.
want [8]	I want to study Spanish.
wish [8]	I wish to stay.
would like [8] (meaning "wish" or "want")	We would like to start now.
yearn	Melanie yearns to travel somewhere exotic.

Politics Words

legislation	törvényhozás
executive	végrehajtói
bill	törvénytervezet
majority	többség
to veto	megvétóz
term	ciklus
constitution	alkotmány
to govern	kormányoz
government	kormány
to be vested	fel van ruházva
to overrule	érvénytelenít
to appeal	fellebbez
unconstitutional	alkotmányellenes
jury	esküdtszék
to shift towards	elmozdul, eltolódik
pluralism	többpártrendszer
alliance	szövetség
coalition	koalíció
consistency	következetesség
procedure	folyamat, eljárás
proportional	arányos
suffrage	szavazójog
constituency	választókerület
to dissolve	feloszlat
to allot	kioszt
populous	népes
referendum	népszavazás
living standard	életszínvonal
accession	csatlakozás
to split	eloszt

to administer	vezet, kormányoz, irányít
proposal	javaslat
committee	bizottság
to review	átnéz
amendment	kiegészítés, változtatás
to submit	benyújt
budget	költségvetés
dispute	vita
framework	keret
delegate	küldött
to forbid, forbade, forbidden	megtilt
discrimination	megkülönböztetés
ethnicity	etnikum
to go bankrupt	csődbe megy
handicap	hátrány

to collapse	összeomlik
to realize one's dreams	megvalósítja az álmait
to derive from	származik, ered vm-ből
inflation	infláció
tax cut	adócsökkenés
to subsidise	segélyez
International Monetary Fund	Nemzetközi Valutaalap
stereotype	sztereotípiá
to tend to	hajlamos
to be green with envy	sárga az irigységtől
in the short run	rövidtávon
in the long run	hosszútávon
prejudice	előítélet
terrorism	terrorizmus
to intimidate	megfélemlít
bombing	robbantás
assassination	merénylet, gyilkosság
biological warfare	biológiai hadviselés
to poison	megmérgez
to threaten	fenyeget
to humiliate	megaláz
malnutrition	alultápláltság
illiteracy	analfabétizmus
adjustment	igazítás, igazodás
recession	recesszió
people, peoples	nép, népek

UNIT 13.

Informalenglish

A	
about to	Peggy is about to leave.
in advance	We booked the tickets in advance.
alive and kicking	I love Berlin. It's alive and kicking.
all of a sudden	I went out in the sun. Then, all of a sudden, it started to rain.
all over the place	There are environmental problems all over the place.
B	
to go from bad to worse	My marks went from bad to worse last term.
to bag sth.	Tom bagged this special offer at an online-shop.
beat-up	Mark is too beat-up to play tennis this evening.
to do the best	He always does his best.
blabber	Don't listen to him, he's a blabber.
to blag sth.	Once in a while young Tim blags his father's cigarettes.
bloody	What a bloody day!
to be blue	She's been feeling blue all day.
bouncer	A bouncer's task is to keep out those who might cause trouble.
bowl of cherries	Marriage it's not always bowls of cherries.
be broke	I can't go to the cinema with you, I'm broke.
to brush up on sth.	I have to brush up on my Spanish.
buck	You can buy a DVD player for less than 100 bucks (dollars).
butt	You're a pain in the butt.
buzz	Parachuting gives me a real buzz.
Buzz off!	Buzz off! I have told you not to come to my place anymore.

C	
a close call	I had a close call. A stone almost hit me!
to catch sth.	Sorry, I didn't quite catch your telephone number.
to catch (a) cold	I walked out in the rain, so I caught (a) cold.
not to have a clue	I don't have a clue about repairing the faucet.
Come off it!	Come off it! This isn't the truth.
as far as I'm concerned	As far as I'm concerned, I'd like to watch the film.
cop	A big crowd of cops gathered in front of the Bank of England.
corner shop	Mother really liked corner shops when she was a child.
cram school	Many pupils have to go to a cram school in the afternoon.
on credit	I'd not buy the new TV on credit.

cut	Mr Brown made big cuts of \$500 million.
D	
damned	I hate going through that damned rush hour.
to dig in one's heels	If you take or express an opinion and refuse to change it, you dig in your heels.
to disrespect sb.	Poor people shouldn't be disrespected.
to do one's best	He does his best to fix the car.
to do someone good	Let's go on a holiday. The sun will do us good.
to do without	If there's no milk for the tea, it'll do without.
down under	Down under will be my next destination.
E	
to be up to one's ears	Sorry, I can't go out with you. I'm up to my ears in work.
every now and then	Every now and then I play the piano.
every other	He comes to me every other week.
to see eye to eye	World Bank and IMF see eye to eye on Asia
F	
fair enough	Fair enough! Let's go out for dinner tonight.
fiddle	Especially fiddles are necessary to play folk music.
to keep the fingers crossed	I have to see the doctor for a checkup. - I'll keep my fingers crossed for you.
flutter	The old lady loves a flutter on the slot machine.
folk	We all are fond of the Irish folk.
for free	I was lucky. I got this CD for free.
freak out	Ron freaked out when he heard that Peter had broken his car.
fridge	Butter must be kept in the fridge.

G	
to get a lot of stick	In his new job Jack gets a lot of stick.
to get cold feet	He wanted to speak to the boss, but he didn't. He got cold feet.
to get fed up with sth.	They get fed up with their neighbour's parties.
to get rid of sth.	We have to get rid of that old car.
to get sth.	Jason, did you finally get your exercise?
to take sth. for granted	I took it for granted the meeting was on Tuesday.
greasy spoon	I'd rather starve instead of eating at a greasy spoon.
groovy	This cocktail tastes groovy.
guy	Jennifer fell in love with the guy from the supermarket.
H	
had better	You'd better go now.

on the other hand	Sue likes pop music, on the other hand she doesn't like discos.
to give a hand	Can you give me a hand with the cupboard?
hard graft	Building our house has been a hard graft.
by heart	My brother has to learn the poem by heart.
hip	Molly always knows what's hip.
to hold s.o.'s horses	"Hold your horses," I said when John began to leave the room.
to be hooked on sth.	Bill is hooked on car racing.
J	
to jump down sb.'s throat	The boss jumped down my throat because I was late for work.
K	
knackered	What has happened? You look so knackered.
to keep an eye on sth./sb.	Will you keep an eye on my baby?
L	
little by little	Andrew had an accident while playing ice-hockey. Little by little he begins to walk.
to look forward to sb.	I look forward to my holidays in Rome.
M	
to make ends meet	She's been out of work for years. How can she make ends meet with four children?
to make friends easily	Chris makes friends easily.
to make oneself at home	Come in, please. Make yourself at home.
to make the most	Let's make the most of the last day of our holidays.
to make up one's mind	Did you make up your mind to buy a new computer?
mash	I love Grandma's homemade mash.

What's the matter?	You look sad. What's the matter with you?
to be mean	Grandfather is mean with money.
to meet sb. halfway	I don't like his ideas, but I can imagine that we should meet halfway.
to mess around	The clown messed around to make the children laugh.
to mess up	Sandy has really messed up this time.

Unit 13. Listening: Communication



THE IMPORTANCE OF TRADITIONAL FORMS OF COMMUNICATION

There has, since the turn of the 21st century, been a rapid rise in new forms of communication, which, when coupled with new technology, have had a tremendous impact on how all types of organisations engage with their stakeholders. Interestingly, against this backdrop of innovation, this sea of change, traditional forms of communication have nevertheless remained important. We take a look at how in a highly connected and digitally communicative world, traditional forms of communication remain as integral as ever to being successful.

FACE-TO-FACE

While other methods of communication do very well to offer relevant and effective engagement, nothing beats face-to-face contact. It puts a human face to your business, it offers a more personable experience and it delivers much more by way of insight. Executives are certainly of this opinion. A study from Forbes showed that eight out of ten leaders still prefer to communicate in person, explaining that face-to-face business meetings and conferences help to build “stronger, more meaningful” relationships.

However, this is an appreciation that these days, where other factors have much more of an influence on the decision-making process – namely cost – the opportunity and practicality of regular face-to-face communication is less realistic. Moreover, each time this form of communication is delivered, it has to achieve – if not exceed – all objectives (such as building trust, reinforcing commitment, explaining new strategies and problem-solving).

VOICE

More relevant than ever in this day and age, voice, which also delivers the human touch, is perhaps just as important as face-to-face contact. Indeed, it is reasonable to state that it is conceivably more important for the fact that it is the dominant form of communication in business and the key link between traditional and more modern methods of engagement and working. Usually, voice is the first point of contact either from an organisational point of view or a stakeholder – you either dial out or receive a call. Beyond that, custom dictates taking the relationship further with face-to-face contact, but once a rapport has been achieved, you once again return to voice. Fascinatingly, this form of communication has been bolstered by technology. For example, far from diminishing its relevance, software and hardware developments – as in social media channels and modern headsets – have reinforced its centrality to most efforts in-house and externally. What is vital these days is for voice to be of the highest quality. After all, customers expect more these days – they have exacting demands. Investing in voice so that audio is superior, contact time is more immediate and engagement more empathetic will help define the right kind of environment to support your business efforts.

(Resource: <http://www.agentheadsets.com/blog/company-tips/the-importance-of-traditional-formsof-communication/801773060>, https://www.123rf.com/stockphoto/face_to_face_communication.html)

Unit 13. Speaking: Communication

Try to talk about this picture for about 2-3 minutes. Use the prompts below.



PROMPTS:

- to avoid
- personal computer
- to download
- convenient

- apps
- virtually
- to manage one's bank accounts
- from an early age onwards
- computer-literate
- introvert
- regular service
- to surf the net
- endless
- to subscribe
- to sign up for

(Resource: <http://www.valleybiggs.com/media-advertising/>)

Commercial English – Information

INFORMATION

I was given your name by Mr Fisher.

We are interested in your samples.

I was interested to hear/know/see that...

There is much demand for ...

Would you kindly send us model 4DC ?

We would be grateful for further details about your offer.

Please let us know the current freight rate for sea/rail /air/ road transport. In addition I would like a valid price list.

Would your company be able ...?

Please get in touch with our secretary, Mrs Barnes.

Please reply without delay/by return of post

Layout of a Formal Letter

The example letter below shows you a general layout for a formal letter. Pass your mouse over the different areas of it to find out more information (JavaScript needs to be turned on in your browser).



RULES FOR WRITING FORMAL LETTERS IN ENGLISH

In English there are a number of conventions that should be used when writing a formal or business letter. Furthermore, you try to write as simply and as clearly as possible, and not to make the letter longer than necessary. Remember not to use informal language like contractions.

Addresses:

1) **Your Address** The return address should be written in the top right-hand corner of the letter.

2) **The Address of the person you are writing to**

The inside address should be written on the left, starting below your address.

Date:

Different people put the date on different sides of the page. You can write this on the right or the left on the line after the address you are writing to. Write the month as a word.

Salutation or greeting:

1) **Dear Sir or Madám,** If you do not know the name of the person you are writing to, use this. It is always advisable to try to find out a name.

2) **Dear Mr Jenkins,** If you know the name, use the title (Mr, Mrs, Miss or Ms, Dr, etc.) and the surname only. If you are writing to a woman and do not know if she uses Mrs or Miss, you can use Ms, which is for married and single women.

Ending a letter:

1) **Yours faithfully**

If you do not know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

2) Yours sincerely

If you know the name of the person, end the letter this way.

3) Your signature

Sign your name, then print it underneath the signature. If you think the person you are writing to might not know whether you are male or female, put your title in brackets after your name.

CONTENT OF A FORMAI LETTER

First paragraph

The first paragraph should be short and state the purpose of the letter- to make an enquiry, complain, request something, etc.

The paragraph or paragraphs in the middle of the letter should contain the relevant information behind the writing of the letter. Most letters in English are not very long, so keep the information to the essentials and concentrate on organising it in a clear and logical manner rather than expanding too much.

Last Paragraph

The last paragraph of a formai letter should state what action you expect the recipient to take-to refund, send you information, etc.

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN LETTER WRITING

The following abbreviations are widely used in letters:

asap = as soon as possible

cc = carbon copy (when you send a copy of a letter to more than one person, you use this abbreviation to let them know)

enc. = enclosure (when you include other papers with your letter)

pp = per procuracionem (A Latin phrase meaning that you are signing the letter on somebody else's behalf; if they are not there to sign it themselves, etc)

ps = postscript (when you want to add something after you've finished and signed it)

pto (informal) = please turn over (to make sure that the other person knows the letter continues on the other side of the page)

RSVP = please reply

OUTLINE: A COVERING LETTER

A covering letter is the one that accompanies your CV when you are applying for a job. Here is a fairly conventional plán for the layout of the paragraphs.

Opening Paragraph

Briefly identify yourself and the position you are applying for. Add how you found out about the vacancy.

Paragraph 2

Give the reasons why you are interested in working for the company and why you wish to be considered for that particular post. State your relevant qualifications and experience, as well as your personal qualities that make you a suitable candidate.

Paragraph 3

Inform them that you have enclosed your current CV and add any further information that you think could help your case.

Closing Paragraph

Give your availability for interview, thank them for their consideration, restate your interest and close the letter.

OUTLINE: A LETTER OF ENQUIRY

A letter of enquiry is when you are approaching a company speculatively, that is you are making an approach without their having advertised or announced a vacancy.

Opening Paragraph

Introduce yourself briefly and give your reason for writing. Let them know of the kind of position you are seeking, why you are interested and how you heard about them.

Paragraph 2

Show why their company in particular interests you, mention your qualifications and experience along with any further details that might make them interested in seeing you.

Paragraph 3

Refer to your enclosed CV and draw their attention to any particularly important points you would like them to focus on in it.

Closing Paragraph

Thank them, explain your availability for interview and restate your enthusiasm for their company and desire to be considered for posts that might as yet be unavailable.

Unit 13. Writing: Writing dates

DATES IN WRITTEN ENGLISH

British English

In British English the day is usually put before the month. If you wish, you can add the ending of the ordinal number. The preposition of before the month is usually dropped. You can put a comma before the year, but this is not common anymore in British English.

Example: 5(th) (of) October(,) 2004

American English

In American English the month is usually put before the day. If you wish, you can put the definite article before the day. It is common to write a comma before the year.

Example: October (the) 5(th), 2004

Using digits

You can also write the date by using numbers only. The most common forms are:

Example: 5/10/04 or 5-10-04

Note, however, that 5/10/04 usually means 5 October 2004 in British English and May 10, 2004 in American English. To avoid any possible confusion, you should spell out the month or use the abbreviation.

Slang

Have a look at these words:

SLANG	MEANING
wanna	want to, want a
oughta	ought to
lotta	lot of
gonna	going
gotcha	I got you
gimme	give me
dunno	don't know

Aaustralian English – British English

Australian English	British English
A	
a good lurk	a way of getting something for nothing
ace	excellent
aggro	aggressive
Alf	stupid person
amber (fluid)	beér
arvo	afternoon
Aussie, Strine	Australian
B	
back of beyond	far away in the outback
back of bourke	Middle of nowhere
bathers	swimming costume
beef road	road for trucking cattle by road trains
Beit up.	Shut up.
berko	angry
Bickie	biscuit
billabong	waterhole
Billie	tea kettle
bonkers	crazy
booze	alcohol
Bottle Shop	Liquor Shop
bushranger	criminal

C	
chalkie	teacher
chokie	chocolate
chook	chicken
Chrissie	Christmas
comfort station	toilet
counter meal	pub meal
cut lunch	sandwiches
D	
daks, strides	trousers
dead horse (old)	tomato sauce
deli	Milk bar (South Wales)
digger	soldier
dili	idiot
dónk	engine (car or boat)
Duco	Car paint
dunny	lavatory (outdoor)
E	
earbush (old)	non-stop talk
F	
flake	shark meat

to fossick	to hunt for gemstones
G	
game	brave
to gander	to have a look
G'day ma te.	Hi.
gibber (used in the west)	stony desert
to give it away	to give up
good oil	exact information
Goodon ya!	Welldone!
to grizzle	to whine
grog	alcohol
gum tree	Eucalyptus tree
gummy	a sheep which has lost all its teeth
H	
How are you going?	How are you?
J	
Jackaroo	trainee on a cattle farm
jocks	underpants (men)
jumbuck (mainly in songs)	sheep
K	
kelpie	sheepdog
kiwi, enzedder	New Zealander
L	
lolly (in the country)	money
M	
mad as a cut snake	furious
middy, pot	beér glass (285 ml)
milko	milkman
mozzie	mosquito

N	
nana	banana
neddies	horses
never-never	remote desert country
num-nums (parent to kid talk)	tasty food
O	
oil	information
Onya!	Good on you!
P	
paddock	field
piffle	nonsense
pissed	drunk
plonk	cheap wine
pom	English person
postie	postman



prang	accident
R	
Reckon!	Absolutely!
ringer (in the country)	fást sheep shearer
Roo	kangaroo
S	
send 'er down Hughie	I hope it's going to rain.
she	it
she's apples	it's fine
Shove off.	Go away.
snag	sausage
station	farm
T	
tea	evening meal
tucker	food
V	
vegemite	vegetable extract (used for sandwiches)
vegies	vegetables
W	
wharfie	dockworker
woolgrower	sheepfarmer
Y	
Yank	American
you've got Buckley's	you haven't got a chance/hope in hell

Thanks to Alexander, Matt, Richard, Marie and Paula.

British – American English – Spelling Rules

British - American English - Spelling Rules

There are some spelling differences in American English. In the 1800's, the US Congress actually called for several changes to make words more phonetic. Look at the following examples:

	British English	American English	Example (British - American)
1	words ending in -re	change to -er	centre - center metre - meter
2	words ending in -our	change to -or	colour - color
3	words ending in -ogue	change to -og	catalogue - catalog
4	words ending in -ise/ize	ending only in -ize	realise/realize - realize
5	final -l doubled after short vowel	-l not always doubled after a short vowel	travelled - traveled modelling - modeling
6	words ending in -ence	change to -ense	defence - defense licence - license

Look at the followings lists for words which have different meanings in British and American English:

British English - American English

American English - British English

Thanks to John.

British (not only British) newspapers can be classified into groups according to various criteria:

1. *The sales figures and the socioeconomic class of the readers:*

- a. The 'quality' papers have longer, more serious articles than the populars'; they are for the upper income groups.
- b. The 'popular' papers appeal to a larger audience than the 'quality' papers and, as a consequence, they have larger scales. They are sensational newspapers with shorter articles and a lot of photos.

2. *The days and time of publication:*

- a. Daily papers: they appear every day, except for Sunday.
- b. Sunday papers: are more like magazines, with long articles about books, plays, films, sport and different stories. Like the dailies, they are either 'quality' or 'popular'.
- c. Morning papers: they go on sale early morning.
- d. Evening papers: whose sales might start as early as midday and continue until the evening.

A newspaper mostly consists of articles on various topics. The text is arranged in columns. The title of an article is called a headline. At the top of the front page you can see the heading. If you are interested in sporting events you can study the sports news which is often to be found at the back. The back page is usually devoted to advertisements. The news about the events at home is called domestic news, while news about events abroad is foreign news. If you examine a typical news story, you will discover that the headline gives you the most important facts. The first paragraph or lead, tells the story briefly. The other paragraphs give details.

English – a world language

340 million people speak English worldwide. (1st Chinese – 1.2 billion, 2nd Spanish – 360 million, 9th German – 98 million)

It's not clear how many people around the world use English as a second language. Numbers vary from 350 million to one billion.

English is spoken in the following countries:

Australia, Botswana, Brunei, Cameroon, Canada, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Fiji, The Gambia, Gyana, India, Ireland, Israel, Lesotho, Liberia, Malaysia, Micronesia, Namibia, Nauru, New Zealand, Palau, Papua New Guinea, Samoa, Seychelles, Sierra Leone, Singapore, Solomon Islands, Somalia, South Africa, Suriname, Swaziland, Tonga, UK, USA, Vanuati, Zimbabwe and many Caribbean states

The following words are used in American English and were taken from German. Doppelganger, Kindergarten, Poltergeist, Rucksack, Wanderjahr, Weltanschauung, Weltschmerz, Zeitgeist

Another German word commonly used in American English is "Gesundheit".

No one in the USA really knows what it means, but you say it after someone sneezes, just like

in German speaking countries.

Thanks to Mark.

Commercial English – Letters

Commercial English - Letters

You write to	How to begin the letter	How to end the letter
an unknown firm/person (BE) (AE)	Dear Sir/Madam (BE) (AE)	Yours faithfully (BE)
	Dear Sir or Madam (BE) (AE)	Yours truly (AE)
	To whom it may concern (AE)	Truly yours (AE)
a woman whose name you don't know	Dear Madam (BE) (AE)	Yours faithfully (BE)
		Yours truly (AE)
		Truly yours (AE)
a man whose name you don't know	Dear Sir (BE) (AE)	Yours faithfully (BE)
		Yours truly (AE)
		Truly yours (AE)
a person whose name you know	Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms Fisher (BE) (AE)	Yours sincerely (BE)
		Very truly yours (AE)
		Sincerely (yours) (AE)
a person you know personally	Dear Ann/John (BE) (AE)	(With) Best wishes (BE) (AE)
		Yours (BE)
		Love (BE)
		All the best (AE)
		Kindest/Best regards (AE)

Example of a formal letter

MICHAEL WARRENS LTD - 78 Court Street - Nottingham - UK

Mrs Sara Fisher
Manager
18 St. James Avenue
Bournemouth HB3 4LN

4th October 2004

Our ref: US / HK 1082
Your ref: SP / T

Dear Mrs Fisher,

Your order

We are pleased to acknowledge your order no. 202 dated 1st October 2001. Your order is already dealt with. We will inform you when the consignment is ready for delivery.

Please do not hesitate to contact us if you require further information.

We thank you for your custom and again look forward to being of service to you in the future. Yours sincerely,



M Warrens (Mr)
Enc

The envelope

The position of the address is the same like in the letter.

Street, Road and Avenue can be written in abbreviations (St), (Rd) (Av).

The postcode/zip code you write under the town

Write the name of the country in CAPITAL LETTERS.

Example:

Mr Michael Warrens
Software
78 Court St
Nottingham
WQ1 6P0
UNITED KINGDOM

In the corner top left you can find the following phrases:

Air Mail
Confidential
Express
Fragile
Please forward
Postage paid
Printed Matter
Private/Personal
Registered
Sample
To be called for
Urgent

An Example for the Informal letter and Some Useful Information about it

Dear Peter,

I am writing to you in connection with my arrival to you. I am arriving at Waterloo Station, at 10.55 a.m. next Saturday, July 5th. Can you meet me?

I'm sure you will be able to recognize me if you look at the photo I have recently sent to you. I am going to wear red jeans, white T-shirt and a hat. I am wearing glasses as well. I am going to wear my hair in pony tails.

I hope your family is all right and we can see each other soon.

I am looking forward to meeting you.

Bye for now,

Zsuzsa

SOME USEFUL INFORMATION ABOUT WRITING AN INFORMAL LETTER IN ENGLISH.

– Greeting should be on the left hand side corner and put comma after it (comma can be left out too)

Dear Judy(,)

.....

– In your introduction start with a set phrase (as in the example above: / am writing to you...) and refer to some earlier information and reason you are writing.

Below you can see some examples:

„/ have just received your letter and I am writing at once...”

„I’m sorry it has taken meso long to reply to your last letter but...”

„I was very sorry to hear...”

„Thank you very much for your letter. It is lovely to hear about what has going on with you.”

„ The reason I am writing is that...”

– The body of the letter should be 6-8 lines at elementary level (A2), 15-20 lines intermediate level (B2).

– Close the letter with any of the below mentioned set phrases according to your letter:

„I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.”

„I d- hope to see you soon.”

„Say hell- to...from me.”

„D- write me soon amd tell me about yourself”

„Bye for now. Take care and write me soon.”

– Saying goodbye in an informal letter:

„Love/Lots of love,”

„Yours/Yours ever,”

„All the best/ Best regards/Best wishes,”

– Signature. Leave out one line after saying goodbye and sign it a little bit to the right side below it.

– P.S. If you have left out something from your letter, you can write your sentences in short after P.S.

Letter

Írj egy levelet angol ismerősödnek arról, hogy vettél egy ruhát amit vissza kellett vinned a boltba, mert kimostad és összement. Ecseteld részletesen, hol vetted, drága volt -e, hogy nézett ki a ruha és milyen volt veled az eladó (kedves vagy udvariatlan) és végül hogyan végződött a történet.

EXAMPLE OF AN INFORMAL LETTER

2nd May

Dear John(,)

Thanks for your last letter and the nice photos.....

.....
Sorry, but I have to finish.

Hope to hear from you again.

*Take care,
Peter*

tips:

- the date: top right hand corner (day/month-BE - or month/day-AE)
- comma after name not necessary, but begin after that with a CAPITAL letter
- ending: Take care, Cheers, Yours, Love, then a comma and your name

I expect to pass through this world but once

I expect to pass through this world but once;
any good thing therefore that I can do, or any
kindness that I can show to any fellow-creature,
let me do it now; let me not defer or neglect it,
for I shall not pass this way again.

forrás: www.englishclud.com